

新概念英语 第三册

DEVELOPING SKILLS

课堂笔记

New
Concept
English

3



胶囊助学计划

使用指南

首先，非常开心大家能喜欢我们的课程。之前常常有学员询问有没有课后练习的电子版文件或者PPT文件，想要打印出来，方便学习。基于此，我们设计制作了这本专门针对我们的视频课程的学习手册（课程笔记和课后练习）。这本手册的内容设置和视频课程的学习顺序是完全吻合的。这样在学习视频的时候，省去做笔记的时间，可以更专注的听课，做知识点的标注。

除此之外，我们在每一个偶数课后设置了笔记页，笔记页采用了康奈尔笔记法的布局。Questions位置来记录你遇到的问题；Homework位置来完成你的课后作业；Summary & Recap位置来进行回忆和总结核心知识点。如右图所示。

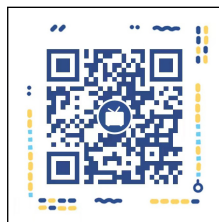
本手册的所有权归胶学所有，且为付费产品。我们只在胶学的官方【小鹅通店铺】进行售卖，如果您是从除此之外的任何地方购买此商品，欢迎您告诉我们，并随手举报。

本产品需要配合B站(哔哩哔哩)免费视频课程使用，在B站搜索“胶学”或扫描下方二维码来学习。如果您是从任何地方免费获得此商品的，欢迎关注微信公众号：jiaonangzhuxue，以打赏的方式支持我们，当然微信公众号中还有更多的学习资源提供给大家。

特别提醒

在制作的过程中难免有错误，欢迎指出。我们会做出调整。或者您有任何关于本手册的想法都可以发送 E-mail 告诉我们。

E-mail: capsuleacademy@icloud.com



Questions

记录问题

Homework

课后作业

Summary & Recap

回忆总结

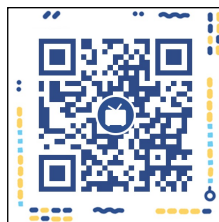
刘羽 Leo 老师个人账号

B站搜：刘羽Leo

公众号搜：刘羽Leo（账号：liuyuleo42）

或扫如下二维码关注账号，获取如下内容：

1. 原价2499元，现免费雅思托福课
2. 直播（及回放）答疑解惑
3. 英语学习方法论+教育文章合集
4. 内部读书会（英文原著）积极心理学，批判性思维，冥想等
5. 学英语看世界系列
6. 新概念英语·伴读（暂定：答疑解惑+判作业+直播语法/发音/口语练习）
7. 英语老师师资培训
8. 更多免费课程与知识分享...



It's never too late to learn.

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
37	38	39	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
49	50	51	52	53	54	55	56	57	58	59	60
<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

/ˈpju:mə/

puma n.

- 1 The puma I saw last night belongs to the London Zoo. NCE2 L28
- 2 This is such a beautiful puma that I want to see it everyday. NCE2 L35
- 3 If you saw a puma in London, I would give you 2,000. NCE2 L40

/ˈspɒt/

spot v. n.

- 1 spot sb. doing sth.
- 2 They spotted Leo selling ice cream on the street.
- 3 did/who/when/where...
- 4 A puma was spotted in the London last night.
- 5 was/what/where/when...
- 6 We found a good spot to have a picnic.

/ˈeɪdɪəns/

evidence n.

- 1 He was trying to find evidence. NCE2 L7
- 2 The evidence was found by the police last month. NCE2 L10
- 3 I've got evidence.
- 4 Do you have any evidence?

/əˈkju:mjuleɪt/

accumulate v.

- 1 [Story]: The evidence began to accumulate.
- 2 did/how/why...
- 3 They were able to accumulate enough evidence. NCE2 L43
- 4 They hoped to accumulate enough money.
- 5 My dream is to accumulate enough wealth.

/əˈblɪdʒ/

oblige v.

- 1 feel obliged to do sth.
- 2 I really feel obliged to tell you. Disturbia (2007)
- 3 Now, I feel obliged to return this to Leo. NCE2 46
- 4 I feel obliged to invite him.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/hʌnt/

hunt n. v.

- 1 [Story]: The hunt for the puma began in a small village.
- 2 did/where/what/why...
- 3 Now, they feel obliged to hunt for the puma in London.
- 4 do/why/who/what...

/ˈblækberɪ/

blackberry n.

- 1 v. pick/buy/like... blackberry
- 2 No one could account for the fact that he eats blackberry everyday. NCE2 L46
- 3 I can't tell the difference between blackberry and other berries. NCE2 L42
- 4 I regretted buying all these blackberries. NCE2 L41

/ˈhju:mən/ ˈbi:ɪŋ/

human being

- 1 [Story]: A puma will not attack a human being.
- 2 A puma attacked a human being last night.
- 3 A puma has attacked several human beings so far.
- 4 Look, that puma is attacking a human being.

/ˈkɔ:nə/

corner v.

- 1 A human being was cornered by a puma in London last night.
- 2 A rabbit was cornered by a puma in London Zoo.
- 3 was/who/what/when/where...
- 4 It is the most basic human reaction that if you are cornered, your instinct is flight or fight.

/treɪl/

trail n.

- 1 a trail of
- 2 The storm left behind it a trail of broken houses and cars.
- 3 The captain was followed by a trail of detectives.

/prɪnt/

print n. v.

- 1 Paw prints were spotted on the beach yesterday morning.
- 2 was/what/where/when...
- 3 All these paw prints in my garden are driving me mad. NCE2 L21

/klɪŋ/ /klɪŋ/

cling clung clung v.

- 1 cling to sb./sth.
- 2 [Story]: Puma fur was found clinging to bushes.
- 3 was/what/why...
- 4 We got so wet that our clothes clung to us. NCE2 L35
- 5 She began to cry and clung to me.

/kən'vɪns/

convince v.

- 1 sth. convinced sb. that + 句子
- 2 This convinced me that he was honest.
- 3 This convinced me that he had bought a new car.
- 4 sb. was/were convinced that + 句子
- 5 The detective was convinced that he had resisted the temptation.
- 6 How can I convince you?

/sʌm'həʊ/

somehow

- 1 I get lost somehow.
- 2 Somehow, I don't know how to explain this to her. NCE2 L33
- 3 Somehow, he is strong like a horse now. NCE2 L36

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】*5
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/dɪ'stɜ:b/

disturb v.

- 1 It is disturbing to think that + 句子
- 2 he saw me kissing you. NCE2 L35
- 3 she wrote to Leo. NCE2 22
- 4 the airport will come into use next month. NCE2 L21

- spot sb. doing sth.
- feel obliged to do sth.
- a trail of
- cling to sb./sth.
- sth. convinced sb. that + 句子
- sb. was/were convinced that + 句子
- It is disturbing to think that + 句子

01 Story+Expressions

- at large
- be found in
- take sth. seriously
- sth. proved adj.
- sb. confirmed that + 句子
- claim to have done sth.
- find sb. doing sth.
- go on

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

at large

- 1 (especially of a criminal or dangerous animal) at liberty; escaped or not yet captured.
- 2 The man who killed the young man is still at large.
- 3 Why is the puma still at large?

be found in

- 1 if something is found in a particular place, it lives, grows, or exists there.
- 2 The largest of these deserts are found in Central Asia.
- 3 Antioxidants are found in certain foods.

take sth./sb. seriously

- 1 He takes his job seriously.
- 2 Most teachers take themselves too seriously.
- 3 Don't take it too seriously.

claim to have done sth.

- 1 She claimed to have seen paw prints of a puma in London.
- 2 She claimed to have set up a new world record. NCE2 L36
- 3 She claimed to have returned the book to Leo. NCE2 L45

sth. proved adj.

- 1 [Story]: The search proved difficult.
- 2 The questions proved easy.
- 3 You have proved yourself.
- 4 prove it

sb. confirmed that + 句子

- 1 He confirmed that ...
- 1 the puma was still at large.
- 2 its fur was clung to bushes.
- 3 she was busy cooking. NCE2 L40

find sb. doing sth.

- 1 I found her drinking my whisky.
- 2 I found her watching a musical. NCE2 L42
- 3 I found her putting out the fire. NCE2 L27

go on

- 1 go on doing sth. = continue
- 2 She went on talking about her work.
- 3 Leo went on working after he had had dinner. NCE2 14

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈiːkwəl/

equal v. equally adv.

- Two plus two equals four.
- be equal to sth. : to have the ability to deal with a problem, piece of work etc successfully.
- I'm not sure he's equal to the task.
- They are different, but equally good.

/ˈvɪkə/

vicar n.

- They spotted the vicar picking blackberries. L1
- This convinced the vicar that he knew nothing about this. L1
- It is easy for the vicar to explain this to villagers. NCE2 L32&L33

/ˈreɪz/

raise v. + money

- to collect money that you can use to do a particular job or help people.
- The vicar learnt that he had raised enough money. NCE2 L45
- It occurred to the vicar that he could raise money from the villagers. NCE2 L46

/ˈtɔːtʃlaɪt/

torchlight n. torch n.

- She had a glimpse of his face in the torchlight. NCE2 L42
- Did she have a glimpse of his face in the torchlight?
- what/who/when...
- torch n. + v.
- We needn't have bought this torch. NCE2 L41

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈkɔːz/

cause n. 原因; 理由 v. 导致; 引起

- NCE2 L53 Forest fires are often caused by broken glass or by cigarette ends ...
- NCE2 L53 This morning, however, a fireman accidentally discovered the cause.
- for one cause or another
- She is always busy working late for one cause or another. NCE2 L40

/wəʊk/ /weɪk/

woke (wake) up with a start

- Our vicar woke up with a start last night.
- Did your vicar wake up with a start last night?
- Who woke up with a start last night?
- when/why...

/bɛl/

bell n. ring v.

- The bell is driving the vicar of the village mad/crazy. NCE2 21
- The vicar felt obliged to repair the bell. L1
- He rang the bell, but nobody opened the door.

/ˈfɪgə/

catch sight of a figure

- glimpse for a moment; suddenly notice.
- When she caught sight of him, she smiled.
- She screamed when she saw a figure at her bedroom window. NCE2 L7
- He saw a figure at the edge of a forest last night. NCE2 L44
- did/who/what/where/when...

/ˈrekəɡnaɪz/

recognize v.

- 1 Can you recognize him?
- 2 How did you recognize me?

/ˈləʊkəl/ ˈgrəʊsə/

local grocer n.

- 1 The local grocer takes his work seriously. L1
- 2 The local grocer claimed to have sold out everything in his shop. L1
- 3 The vicar found the local grocer repairing the bell last night.
- 4 did/who/what/when...

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- be equal to sth.
- for one cause or another
- woke (wake) up with a start
- catch sight of sb./sth.

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

02 Grammar

1. be always doing sth.

Our vicar is always raising money for one cause or another.

be+doing: 与always连用时, 表示频率过高, 令说话者心烦, 生厌(非绝地)。常用肯定。

He is always losing his keys.

I'm always making that mistake.

Attention: He's always reading. (annoying / approval)

2. whatever

Whatever are you doing up here?

ever here is not necessary in the sentence but is added to emphasize the speaker's surprise/astonishment/anger/irritation/dismay. It has the same meaning as on earth/in the world. :

- Why ever did you wash it in boiling water? (dismay)
- Who ever are you? (The other person is presumably an intruder.)
- Who ever left the door open? (What stupid person left it open?)

- Where ever have you put my briefcase? (I can't find it anywhere.)
- Whatever are you doing in my car? (astonishment/annoyance)

- When ever did you leave home? (You must have left very early.)
- How ever did he escape unhurt? (The car was a complete wreck.)

- Where ever have you been? I've been looking for you everywhere!
- Who ever told you I'd lend you the money? I've no money at all!

- What would you like to do? We could go and see a film, or go swimming.
- Whatever. (I don't care or I'm not interested)

3. do/does/did 表强调

You certainly did give me a surprise.

do/does/did 肯定句表强调: 确实(v.换原型)

1. She did morning exercises this morning.

She did do morning exercises this morning.

2. You look nice today!

You do look nice today!

3. She thinks I don't love her, but I love her.

She thinks I don't love her, but I do love her.

4. I played football when I was young.

I did play football when I was young.

5. Do you study everyday?

I do study everyday.

6. It might seem easy but it takes a long time.

It might seem easy but it does take a long time.

4 was/were doing 表礼貌

You see, I was hoping to give you a surprise.

过去时态, 用于现在/将来, 更加有礼貌

We can use the past continuous to make sentences and requests seem more polite. This is because they sound less definite, more temporary and more gentle. From BBC

NCE2 L68 I was just wondering how to spend the morning -- until I saw you

1. Were you looking for any style in particular, sir?

2. I wondered if you were free this evening.

3. Good morning. I was wondering: do you need help moving that stuff?

4. I was thinking – what about borrowing Jake's car?

5. Is my computer ready yet? I was wondering if my computer was ready yet.

homework

1. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study-Test & Learning Pyramid
2. 反复朗读/阅读语法例句
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法
4. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

02 Story+Expressions

- for one cause or another
- get enough money to do sth.
- sb. be armed with sth.
- recognize A as B
- give sb. a surprise
- What's going on?
- I'm glad that + 句子
- get used to sth.

for one cause or another

- 1 for one reason or another
- 2 ...but for some reason it could not be used then. NCE2 L21
- 3 For one reason or another, she had a very good seat. NCE2 L1

get enough money to do sth.

- 1 I couldn't get enough money to go to the theatre tonight. NCE2 L1
- 2 I got enough money to fly to New York. NCE2 L4
- 3 Could you get enough money to move to New Zealand? NCE2 L6

sb. be armed with sth.

- 1 arm sb. with sth.
- 2 He armed the robot with a dagger.
- 3 The government armed the soldiers with the new guns.
- 4 sb. be armed with sth.
- 5 The vicar was armed with a torch.

What's going on?

- 1 What is happening in this place?
What is the explanation for the strange things that are happening here?
- 2 Mary: What's all the noise? What's going on? Sue: We're just having a little party.
- 3 What's all this broken glass? What's going on?

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

recognize A as B

To remember or identify someone or something as being a certain person or thing one has previously perceived.

- 1 [Story]: He immediately recognized the figure as our local grocer.
- 2 did/how soon/who...
- 3 I recognized her as the woman who we saw at the station last night. NCE2 L28

give sb. a surprise

- 1 Leo gave me a surprise yesterday.
- 2 Did Leo give you a surprise yesterday?
- 3 When did Leo give you surprise?
- 4 why/who...
- 5 Let's give him a surprise.

I'm glad that + 句子

- 1 I'm glad that we got enough money to help him. L2
- 2 I'm glad that the police felt obliged to investigate. L1
- 3 I'm glad that you take your job seriously. L1

get used to sth. (NCE2)

If you get used to something or someone, you become familiar with it or get to know them, so that you no longer feel that the thing or person is unusual or surprising. — Collins

1 This is how we do things here. You'll soon get used to it. — Collins

2 be used to doing sth. / get used to doing sth.

3 NCE2 L79 I am used to traveling by air.

4 I'm used to driving in London now.

5 You'll soon get used to living in the country.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈɡɒdɪs/

goddess n. god

- 1 a female god: a woman whose great charm or beauty arouses adoration
- 2 She dreamed of becoming a Hollywood screen goddess. NCE2 L38
- 3 I'm looking at a goddess.
- 4 Athena is the Greek goddess of wisdom and war

/ɑːkiˈblɒdʒɪst/ /ɑːkiˈblɒdʒi/

archaeologist n. archaeology n.

- 1 These two archaeologists are always talking about the Greek goddess. L2
- 2 Armed with the torch, these archaeologists went into the cave. L2
- 3 These archaeologists are equal to their tasks. L2

/ɪˈdʒiːən/

Aegean adj.

/ɪkˈsplɔː/

explore v. explorer n. exploration n.

- 1 This archaeologist explored the cave for years.
- 2 did/who/why/how many years...
- 3 These explorers claimed to have seen a human being in the cave. L1
- 4 I'll finally be able to explore the courtyard below. NCE2 L43

/ˈprɒməntəri/

promontory n.

- 1 on a/the promontory
- 2 They built a lighthouse on this promontory years ago.
- 3 did/what/why/where/when...
- 4 The police felt obliged to investigate the strange noise from the promontory. L1

/ˈprɒspərəs/

prosperous adj.

- 1 [Story:] The city at one time must have been prosperous. NCE2 L17 & L19
- 2 The city at one time can't have been prosperous.
- 3 The city at one time may/might have been prosperous.
- 4 It used to be a very prosperous town. NCE2 L31

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/sɪvəlaɪˈzeɪʃən/

civilization n.

- 1 [Story:] It enjoyed a high level a civilization.
- 2 did/how/why/when...
- 3 Chinese civilization is one of the oldest in the world.
- 4 The archaeologists are interested in ancient civilizations. NCE2 L20

/ˈstɔːri/

storey n. story

- 1 Most of the houses in this street have three or four storeys.
- 2 My bedroom is on the third storey.
- 3 I live on the top storey.
- 4 do/where/who...

/ˈdreɪnɪdʒ/

drainage n.

- 1 drainage system
- 2 She recognized him as the man who repaired the drainage system yesterday. L2 NCE2 L28
- 3 You are always talking about the drainage system. L2

/ˈwɜːʃɪp/

worship n. v.

- 1 a is/was used as a place of worship...
- 2 This room was used as a place of worship many years ago.
- 3 was/what/why...
- 4 On the island the people worshipped different gods or goddesses.

/ˈseɪkrɪd/

sacred adj.

- 1 sacred room/temple/place
- 2 A church is a sacred building.
- 3 In India the cow is a sacred animal.
- 4 For one reason or another, the sacred temple was built many years ago. L2

/ˈfræɡmənt/

fragment n.

- 1 v. + fragments of a Roman vase/broken glass/bone
- 2 The archeologists found fragments of bone in the most scared room of the temple.
- 3 Leo did find fragments of a Roman vase in his courtyard. L2

/rɪˈmeɪnz/

remains n.

- 1 discover/visit/find/examine/see
- 2 We visited the remains of a temple.
- 3 did/who/why/what/when...
- 4 The archaeologist discovered the remains of this ancient city in 1989.
- 5 did/who/what/when...

/ˈklæsɪkəl/

classical adj.

- 1 study/listen to/learn+classical music/art
- 2 It was obvious that he didn't enjoy listening to classical music last night. NCE2 L51
- 3 I prefer to listen to classical music rather than pop music. NCE2 L50
- 4 Classical time...

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/rɪːkənˈstrʌkt/

reconstruct v. re-

- 1 rebuild/re...
- 2 The archaeologists reconstructed the fragments of the Roman vase.
- 3 did/who/what...
- 4 They've decided to reconstruct this building.
- 5 Although the city was destroyed during the war, they reconstructed it. NCE2 L49

/rest/ /hɪp/

rest n. v. hip n.

- 1 have a rest
- 2 [Story]: Her hands rested on her hips.
- 3 Don't put your hands on my hips.
- 4 She rested her head on my shoulder.
- 5 did/who/where...

/ˈleŋθ/

full-length adj.

- 1 wear +a full-length + dress
- 2 She get tired of wearing a full-length dress every night. NCE2 L49
- 3 She get used to wearing a full-length dress every night. L2

/ˈɡreɪsfəl/

graceful adj.

- 1 Isn't she graceful. NCE1 L67
- 2 She is graceful, isn't she? NCE1 L103
- 3 She is as graceful as a swan. NCE2 L8
- 4 She was so graceful last night that ... NCE2 L35

/aɪˈdentəti/

identity n.

1 discover his/her identity

2 The archaeologist haven't been able to discover her identity. NCE2 L43

3 find/lost/show...+ identity card

4 Employees must show their identity cards at the gate.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- a is/was used as a place of
- worship...
- on a/the promontory
- drainage system
- sacred room/temple/place
- have a rest
- identity card

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能 听出关键短语/句子
3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

03 Story+Expressions

- sb. make a (adj.) discovery of sth.
- a be equipped with b
- equip sb. with sth.
- be used as
- date from...
- date back to...
- happen to do
- be amazed to find that + 句子
- turn out to be...
- despite/ despite the fact that...

sb. make a (adj.) discovery

:If someone makes a discovery, they become aware of something that they did not know about before.

Sometimes, they can make a discovery right at home. —The New York Times

I'm tired of listening to them, for they are always "making a new discovery" NCE2 L49 & L2

How did Leo make this interesting discovery?

a be equipped with b

If you equip a person or thing with something, you give them the tools or equipment that are needed. — Collins

Their ships would be equipped with sails. — The Economist

Every bike should be equipped with a bell. — The New York Times

equip sb. with sth.

After equipping me with the tools, he sent me up the ladder to repair the roof. NCE2 L49

be used as & use a as b

I don't like your using my car as your private taxi.

... villagers were used as guinea pigs in chemical experimentation.

It is known that even soldiers were used as guinea pigs...

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

date from... & date back to...

This vase dates from the Roman times. Some of these date back to the sixteen century.

happen to do

To do something unintentionally; to experience something by chance(碰巧).

I just happened to see your mother today—what a lovely woman! NCE2 L2
I happened to meet an old friend in town. I happen to live here.

be amazed to find that + 句子

They were amazed to find that the vicar got enough money to repair the bell. L2

They were amazed to find that the vicar was armed with a gun. L2

turn out to be...

: 结果是; 原来是; 证明是
used to say that something or someone eventually becomes something or is found to have a particular identity, quality, ability, etc. — Webster

The play turned out to be a success.
The animal in the bushes turned out to be a puma.

He was so charming on our first date, but he turned out to be a real jerk.

despite/ despite the fact that...

despite ... in spite of ...

红皮书中113

despite the fact that...

Despite the fact that I'm in a fat suit I can't take off, **despite the fact that** pretty much everyone is making fun of me behind my back, **despite the fact that** your little girlfriend gave me the stink eye in art class yesterday.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap

/ˈmænjuəl/

manual adj. n.

- 1 Leo did manual work all day yesterday.
- 2 After doing manual work all day, he could finally have a rest. NCE2 L49 L3
- 3 Oh great! I'm not tired at all. Despite the fact that I did manual work all day yesterday. L3
- 4 read the manual...
- 5 Why don't you read the manual?

/ˈkɒlə/

collar n.

- 1 white-collar / blue-collar workers
- 2 She dreamed of becoming a white-collar worker for years. NCE2 L38
- 3 did/why/who/how long...
- 4 A short while ago, he became a blue-collar worker. NCE2 L52
- 5 wear a collar...

/ˈsækrɪfaɪs/ /sækrefaɪs/

sacrifice v. n.

- sacrifice (someone or something) for (someone or something else)
- 1 We must make a sacrifice sometimes.
 - 2 Don't feel obliged to make a sacrifice. L1
 - 3 But I can't make that sacrifice. Chariots of Fire (1981)
 - 4 He sacrificed a lot of opportunities for you.
 - 5 I would sacrifice anything for her. Taken (2008)
 - 6 How many men would sacrifice their careers for their family like you have? Vacation (2015)

/ˈprɪvəlɪdʒ/

privilege n.

- 1 I had the privilege of meeting the queen.
- 2 I hope to have the privilege of working with them again. NCE2 L36
- 3 I'm glad to have the privilege of working for this company. NCE2 L4

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈdʌstmən/

dustman n.

- 1 This morning, I happened to meet the dustmen who works for our company. L3
- 2 That dustman has got used to working at night. L2
- 3 The dustman woke up with a start. L2

/kɔ:pə'reɪʃən/

corporation n.

- 1 She didn't want to work for a big corporation at that time.
- 2 Did she want to work for a big corporation at that time?
- 3 Why didn't she want to work for a big corporation at that time?

/ˈəʊvərlɪz/

overalls n.

- 1 He's always wearing his overalls even after work. L2
- 2 His wife found him cleaning overalls in the early morning. L1
- 3 I'm so tired, for I have been washing my overalls. NCE2 L52

/ˈʃaʊə/

shower n.

- 1 The water was cold but I took a shower anyway.
- 2 After taking a shower, please get the bathroom in order. NCE2 L49 & 52
- 3 I rang the bell, but nobody answered. It was obvious that he was taking a shower. NCE2 L51
- 4 Before going to work, I need to take a shower. NCE2 L49

/ˈsi:kɹɪt/

secret n.

- 1 I know you can keep a secret.
- 2 Can you keep a secret?
- 3 You have to believe in yourself. That's the secret of success. NCE2 L28
- 4 This is between you and me.

/ˈsteɪtəs/ /ˈstæʊtəs/

status n.

- 1 After college, she went to work at a high school in Japan, a country where older people are given higher social status. — Business Insider
- 2 He enjoys the status quo. We want it changed. Hired to Kill (1990)
- 3 What's your relationship status? The Intern (2015)

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- do manual work...
- white-collar / blue-collar workers
- make a sacrifice
- sacrifice a for b
- have the privilege of doing sth.
- take a shower...
- keep a secret
- the secret of success
- between you and me
- social status
- status quo
- keep the status quo

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】*5
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

04 Story+Expressions

- These days = nowadays
- Far more adj./n.
- a be referred to as...b
- refer to a as b (被称为)
- for the simple reason that...+句子
- Such is human nature, that + 句子
- be willing to do sth.
- give rise to = lead to = cause
- too embarrassed to do sth.
- be dressed in ...
- change into + 衣服
- half as much as ...
- from now on
- call me/him/her a.

These days...

/ˈnaʊədeɪz/

these days = nowadays: at the present time

- I used to talk to my sister every night. These days, we hardly speak to each other. — Cambridge
- It seems that everyone has a cell phone these days. — Webster

far more adj./n.

So their lives are far more valuable than mine. 28 Weeks Later (2007)
It's far more exciting than what we're talking about. Golden Exits (2017)

a be referred to as... b

refer to a as b

to call (something or someone) by (a specified name or title) — Webster

English is referred to as a universal language. California is referred to as the Golden State.

At one time, people referred to the city as the Paris of the East. —

Webster

I love how you refer to him as your husband.

The Edge of Seventeen (2016)

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

for the simple reason that...+句子

...for the simple reason that most men are older than their wives. —The Economist

We can't go for the simple reason that we can't afford it.

We didn't go swimming for the simple reason that the water was too cold.

Such is human nature, that + 句子

Such is human nature (that we show our appreciation for the most things beyond our understanding but forget to appreciate some of the simplest things of life.)

be willing to do sth.

I'm willing to help you to move this.

NCE2 L52

Are you willing to try?

Are you willing to do that?

give rise to = lead to = cause NCE2 L53

This can give rise to some difficult problems.

Only hard work leads to true success.

Forest fires are often caused by broken glass or by cigarette ends... NCE2 L53

as it did...

Looks the same as it did twenty years ago. Lucky Number Slevin (2006)

And it looks the same as it did the last time I saw it. Titanic (1997)

too embarrassed to do sth.

I'm too embarrassed to talk right now. Can you just leave? Closet Monster (2015)

She was too embarrassed to call. Gone (2012)

And they were too embarrassed to talk about it because they just felt so silly. An American Werewolf in London (1981)

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

be dressed in...

He was dressed in a Santa Claus suit. Broadway Danny Rose (1984)

Because the guys we're killing are dressed in expensive suits... Munich (2005)

change into...

Why don't you change into your work clothes? Eat Pray Love (2010)

half as much as

She can't love you half as much as I do. This dress costs half as much as that one. — Webster

Parents thought that their children in the city were only making half as much as they actually were. — The Economist

from now on

call me/him/her a.

I want you to use those from now on.

I want you to have a rest from now on. L3

Please, just call me Leo.

homework

- 1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】*5
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ˈɛdɪtə/

editor n. edit v.

- 1 The editor felt obliged to investigate. L1
- 2 The editor is always telling me what to do and how to do that. That's so annoying. L2
- 3 May I have the privilege of speaking to the editor? L4

/ɪkˈstri:m/

extreme n.

- 1 go to extreme(s) to do sth.
- 2 We have to be very careful not to go to extremes. —Business Insider
- 3 It stops my brain from going to extremes. Visions (2015)
- 4 Because he takes his job very seriously, he often goes to extremes. L1

/stəˈtɪstɪks/

statistics n. statistic

- 1 Statistics show/suggest that women live longer than men.
- 2 To them, he's just another statistic. Dead on Campus (2014)
- 3 The statistics show that, in general, women live longer than men. — Cambridge

/ˈdʒɜːnəlɪst/

journalist n.

- 1 I want to be a journalist. The Help (2011)
- 2 Leo spotted that journalist running across the street. L1
- 3 We all know that this journalist takes her job very seriously. L1
- 4 The journalist refused to tell me the truth. NCE2 L9

/ˈprezɪdənt/

president n.

- 1 The president changed into his suit before work. L4
- 2 Who is the president of the United States?
- 3 Please call him Mr. President. L4

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈpælɪs/

palace n.

- 1 There is a palace in the middle of a lake.
- 2 This palace was built years ago.
- 3 Last Tuesday we went to the Summer Palace.
- 4 did/when/where/who/how/why...

/ˈpʌblɪʃ/

publish v.

- 1 [Story]: ...refused to publish it.
- 2 The editor refused to publish the article.
- 3 did/who/why/what...
- 4 publish + a book / an article / report...
- 5 If you wrote it, I'd publish the book for you. NCE2 L40
- 6 I'm not going to publish the story. Philomena (2013)

/fæks/

fax n. v.

- 1 send sb. a fax...
- 2 You needn't have sent me this fax. NCE2 L41
- 3 I received this fax this morning. The Big Lebowski (1998)
- 4 did/who/what/when...
- 5 We'd have to wait, because they don't have a fax. Zodiac (2007)

/ɪmˈpeɪənt/

impatient adj.

- 1 Dad got very impatient/angry. NCE2 L1
- 2 I'm getting impatient here. Superbad (2007)
- 3 Don't be so impatient.

/faɪə/

fire v.

- 1 If I did that, I'd get fired. NCE2 L40
- 2 You'll get fired.
- 3 The man who fired him lives across the street. NCE2 L28
- 4 Are you trying to get me fired?

/ə'ɹɪdʒənəli/

originally adv.

- 1 So where's your family from originally? Heat (1995)
- 2 I'm originally from Rio, in Brazil. House of Flying Arrows (2016)
- 3 I live here now, but I wonder who lived here originally.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- go to extreme(s) to do sth.
- publish + a book/an article/report...
- send sb. a fax...
- get impatient
- get/be fired

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】*5
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

05 Grammar

not only + will/can...

And you will not only have to pay him to do this, far more important, you'll have to agree with him.

And not only will you have to pay him to do this, far more important, you'll have to agree with him.

类似一般疑问句

not only +? ...

They will not only respect you, but they'll believe you're the only guy who can fix it.

Not only will they respect you, but they'll believe you're the only guy who can fix it.

not only +? ...

Truth is, he can not only dance, but he'll sing you a hell of a tune.

Truth is, not only can he dance, but he'll sing you a hell of a tune.

not only +? ...

I can not only tell, I know who it is. It's Darryl.

Not only can I tell, I know who it is. It's Darryl.

not only + have/has/had

You not only have refused to kill the boy, you've even stopped the boy from killing himself...

Not only have you refused to kill the boy, you've even stopped the boy from killing himself...

not only +? ...

You not only have done your work, but it looks like you've done Anderson's work as well...

Not only have you done your work, but it looks like you've done Anderson's work as well...

not only + do/does/did...

not only +? ...

Well, the good news is I not only know men, but straight guys are my specialty.

Well, the good news is not only do I know men, but straight guys are my specialty.

not only +? ...

I not only find a doctor, but a beautiful woman, as well.

Not only do I find a doctor, but a beautiful woman, as well.

not only +? ...

I not only believe it, Mr Montrose, but I have the evidence to prove it.

Not only do I believe it, Mr Montrose, but I have the evidence to prove it.

not only +? ...

And they not only all came from healthy livers... they all came from the same liver.

And not only did they all come from healthy livers... they all came from the same liver.

not only +? ...

They not only let me in, they brought me room service.

Not only did they let me in, they brought me room service.

not only +? ...

... Rocky not only wins, but he wins knockout.

...not only does Rocky win, but he wins knockout.

not only + am/is/are/was/ were...

not only +? ...

'Cause she is not only pretty, but... she'll make all your decisions for you.

'Cause not only is she pretty, but... she'll make all your decisions for you.

not only +? ...

I am not only going there for a visit, but I'm going to go there...

Not only am I going there for a visit, but I'm going to go there...

not only +? ...

So, I am not only all alone up here, but I have no idea how to get back, ...

So, not only am I all alone up here, but I have no idea how to get back, ...

not only +? ...

If you continue to listen to your music at that level... you're gonna damage not only your ears, but your neighbors' ears as well.

not only your ears, but your neighbors' ears as well.

If you continue to listen to your music at that level... not only are you gonna damage your ears, but your neighbors' ears as well.

not only are you gonna damage your ears, but your neighbors' ears as well.

部分倒装

句首否定词: 包括但不限于

not / nor / neither not only

never

no

hardly

little

no sooner ... than seldom

not until

homework

1. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study-Test Learning Pyramid
2. 反复朗读/阅读语法例句
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法
4. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

05 Story+Expressions

- provide sb. with sth.
- sb. be instructed to do sth.
- instruct sb. to do sth.
- write an article on /about sth.
- find out sth.
- sb. take a long time to do sth.
- go to press
- inform sb. that + 句子

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

provide sb. with sth.

He provided them with a bed for the night.

Perhaps you can provide me with an answer. Darkest Hour (2017)

The police felt obliged to provide the public with information. L1

This will provide you with two things. The Founder (2016)

provide sb. with sth.

How many times have you found yourself in the awkward position of having to ask a complete stranger in a public restroom to provide you with toilet paper? Guns for Hire (2015)

sb. be instructed to do sth.

instruct sb. to do sth.

I'm instructed to tell you this.

We're instructed to change into this. L4

You were instructed to go to Russia.

Ant-Man (2015)

They instructed me to left the money over there.

did/who/where/what/why/when...

write an article on/about sth.

I'm writing an article on Art.

are/what/why/who...

I had no idea he was writing an article about me. NCE2 L2

find out sth.

They were now fully convinced that she found out about the truth. L1

I did find out why he was here. L2

I can't find out anything about him.

Warrior (2011)

sb. take a long time to do sth.

[Story]: He took a long time to send them. did/why/who...

He took a long time to learn how to swim last summer.

She always takes a long time to take a shower. L4

go to press

We are going to press tonight.

When do we go to press?

Larry, we're going to press in six hours.

Spotlight (2015)

inform sb. that + 句子

I'm instructed to inform you that you're fired.

I must inform you that you need to keep a secret. L4

The company asked me to inform you that you must keep the status quo. L4

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/s m æʃ/ /græb/

smash-and-grab

- 1 smash sth. to pieces NCE2 L49
- 2 They had a fight and he smashed the window to pieces.
- 3 Why is he interested in smashing things to pieces? NCE2 L20
- 4 grab a beer/coffee NCE2 L61

/ɑ:ˈkeɪd/

arcade n.

- 1 We must go to the arcade now so that we could buy that cake. NCE2 L59
- 2 On Sundays, I often go to the arcade with my girlfriend.
do/when/who/where/why...
- 3 When I was young, mom would take me to the arcade, and buy me a nice ice cream. NCE2 L55

/'dʒu:ələri/

jewellery n. jewelry

- 1 That lovely lady in the jewellery shop waited at least 15 minutes.
- 2 Your wife had taken all your mother's jewelry before she died. NCE2 L14
- 3 I made some jewelry for you last night.
- 4 did/how/when/who/why...

/'neɪkləs/

necklace n.

- 1 That's a beautiful necklace. Reminds me of one that belonged to my mother.
The Dark Knight Rises (2012)
- 2 Imagine your husband bought a gold necklace...and, come Christmas, gave it to somebody else. Love Actually (2003)
- 3 Not only did you buy that necklace, but... as well. L5

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/rɪŋ/

ring n.

- 1 He is writing an article on the ancient Roman rings recently. L5
- 2 When I found out who stole the ring, ... L5
- 3 She took a long time to learn how to make rings by herself. L5
- 4 When you take a shower, you should take your ring off. L4

/'bækgraʊnd/

background n.

- 1 BGM: Background music
- 2 We wanna provide you with the right background music. L5
- 3 In big cities, car noise is like background music.
- 4 You can hear people in the background crying. [hear sb. doing sth.]

/'velvɪt/

velvet n.

- 1 I stand in front of a black velvet curtain. Running with Scissors (2006)
- 2 She is willing to give you a free black velvet curtain. L4
- 3 They happen to sell all kinds of velvet curtain. L3

/'hedlaɪt/

headlight n.

- 1 There is something on the headlight, and I don't know what it is.
- 2 The right headlight is broken. NCE2 L10
- 3 It is the right headlight that is broken. NCE2 L58
- 4 He is said to break every headlight in this parking lot. NCE2 L58

/b le ə /

blare v.

- 1 to make an unpleasantly loud noise / to make a very loud noise
- 2 The radio was blaring (out) rock music.
- 3 was/what/why/when...
- 4 The music was blaring and everyone at the party were dancing.

/stɑ:f/

staff n.

- 1 We'll provide each staff with a cellphone and a computer. L5
- 2 Not only did your staff steal my money, but they even left me a note as well. L5
- 3 We should keep the status quo and not fire any staff now. L4
- 4 We had a staff meeting yesterday. did/when...

/reɪd/

raid n. v.

- 1 [Story]: The raid was all over in three minutes.
- 2 was/how long/why/when...
- 3 Did you raid Mickey Pearson's farm? No. The Gentlemen (2019)
- 4 They were planning a raid when we came into the room. NCE2 L7

/'skræmbəl/

scramble v.

- 1 to move or climb hastily especially on all fours; scramble over rocks
- 2 [Story]: The men scrambled back into the car.
- 3 did/where/who/why/how...
- 4 scrambled eggs

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/fæn'tæstɪk/

fantastic adj.

- 1 [Story]: at a fantastic speed...
- 2 They drove away at a fantastic speed.
- 3 did/who/why/how fast...
- 4 You look fantastic. I didn't recognise you.
- 5 That's fantastic.
- 6 I mean, some of the stories are really fantastic. Short Cuts (1993)

/'æʃtreɪ/

ashtray n.

- 1 He have been collecting all kinds of ashtrays for years. NCE2 L52
- 2 You're always smoking, so please use the ashtray. L2
- 3 You should smoke less, for you smell like an ashtray. NCE2 L65

- smash sth. to pieces NCE2 L49
- grab a beer/coffee
- go to the arcade
- background music
- scrambled eggs
- at a fantastic speed
- That's fantastic.

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】*5
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

06 Story+Expressions

- only just...
- come to a stop...
- be too busy doing sth. to do sth.
- money + worth of + n.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

only just... Just a moment earlier.

I've only just arrived.

We've only just read about it in morning papers.

A Clockwork Orange (1971)

We only just met each other, you know. Ex Machina (2014)

be too busy doing sth. to do sth.

I was just too busy to planning everything to notice you.

She was too busy reading her books to listen to your story.

I was too busy talking to other people to notice her, and she left by herself.

come to a stop...

The train came to a stop.

The car came to a stop in front of my house. did/what/why/when/where...

money + worth of + n.

How do you sell millions of pounds worth of diamonds?

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ˈmju:tɪleɪt/

mutilate v.

- 1 The prisoners had been tortured and mutilated.
- 2 Her arm was mutilated in the accident.
- 3 The pilot was mutilated in the plane crash and now has only one leg.

/tʃu: /

chew v. chew up

- 1 Are you chewing gum? v.
- 2 Can you grab some chewing gum for me? L6 n.
- 3 Are you too busy chewing gum to talk to me now? L6 v.
- 4 Why does he have the privilege of chewing gum at work? L4 v.

/fiˈɒnsɪ/

fiance n.

- 1 Her fiancé happened to be around the market last night. L3
- 2 Her fiancé woke up with a start last night, realizing that the door was open. L2 NCE2 L49
- 3 My fiancé is always talking about his work. L2

/ˈmaɪkrəweɪv/

microwave n.

- 1 He sells microwave, and he takes his job very seriously. L1
- 2 It is disturbing to think that there is a snake in my microwave. L1
- 3 He managed to get a free microwave from the market. NCE2 L67
- 4 You should have bought a new microwave. NCE2 L65

/ˈʌvən/

oven n.

- 1 If I had bought that oven, we would have had delicious roast duck last night. NCE2 L64
- 2 The moment the little kid touched the oven, he burst into tears. NCE2 L72 & L60
- 3 My wife instructed me to buy a new oven last week, but I haven't done it yet. L5

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 微信公众号 jiaonangzhuxue

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/seɪfˈki:pɪŋ/

safekeeping n.

- 1 I left my watch with Helen for safekeeping while I swam.
- 2 Hampton had been given the money for safekeeping by a business partner.
- 3 He was instructed to give all the money to Leo for safekeeping. L5

/ˈnju:kɑ:səl/

Newcastle n.

纽卡斯尔

/aɪˈdentɪfaɪ/

identify v.

- 1 She was able to identify her attacker. NCE2 L43
- 2 The police informed me that someone had identified the man who stole my car. L5 NCE2 L28
- 3 Not only did he identify that man, but he also managed to find him as well. L5 NCE2 L67

/ˈspəʊkswɒmən/

spokeswoman n.

- 1 a woman who is chosen to speak officially for a group or organization
- 2 They spotted the spokeswoman drinking wine alone last night. L1
- 3 They recognized her as the spokeswoman for the bank. L2

- chewing gum
- for safekeeping

07 Story+Expressions

- deal with
- go doing...
- Imagine sb's dismay when
- so long as...

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

deal with

- How do you intend to deal with this problem? NCE2 L36
- Don't feel obliged to deal with this. L1
- If I get enough money, I'll deal with it.

go doing...

go climbing; dancing; fishing; hunting; riding; sailing; shooting; skating; skiing; swimming; walking...

- Did you go dancing last night?
- Mom, have you ever gone swimming at night? Beach House (2017)
- I went fishing with my father last weekend.

Imagine sb's dismay when

- Imagine his dismay when he couldn't get enough money to buy the ticket. L2
- Imagine my dismay when I found out that there was no hot water, and I couldn't take a shower. L4

so long as...

so long as = as long as...

meaning: 只要

- You're welcome to stay with us so (as) long as you share the expenses.
- We'll provide you with bed and food as (so) long as you stay with us. L5
- You will be ok so long as you follow my advice.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 微信公众号 jiaonangzhuxue

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/'mɒnəstri/ /seɪnt/ /bə'nɑ:d/

monastery n. St . Bernard

- 1 He lived in a monastery for most of his life.
- 2 did/who/where/why...
- 3 Not only did they go to the monastery, but they... as well. L5
- 4 They are not allowed to enter the monastery for various reasons. N2 L10

/pɑ:s/

pass n.

- 1 Tell the women and children to make for the mountain pass. The Lord of the Rings: The Two Towers (2002) N2 L91
- 2 They kept guard near the mountain pass all night last night. N2 L7 did/who/where/why...
- 3 They were amazed to find that the mountain pass... L3

/'wɒtʃ.dɒg/

watchdog n.

- 1 You deal with the watchdog, and I deal with the guard. L7
- 2 Imagine their dismay when they found out that the watchdog was kept in the back yard. L7
- 3 The watchdog smashed everything to pieces. N2 L49

/'ræʃ.li/

rashly adv.

- 1 act / speak ...
- 2 I may have acted rashly. N2 L19
- 3 I rashly agreed to look after the children. N2 L65
- 4 Sasha, don't act so rashly. Go Back to China (2019)

/'ɪn'kləʊ.ʒə/

enclosure n.

- 1 Trust me, the watchdog is gonna love his new enclosure.
- 2 in a special enclosure...
- 3 We need to get the tiger into the special enclosure.
- 4 She keeps a horse in a special enclosure.
- 5 does/who/why/where...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/'mʌŋk/

monk n.

- 1 These monks rarely go to extremes. L5
- 2 The monk (we saw last night) published an article on love. L5
- 3 The monk provided us with a bed and hot meal last night. L5
- 4 did/who/when...

/'praɪ.və.sɪ/

privacy n.

- 1 Can I get some privacy? Prayers for Bobby (2009)
- 2 Such is human nature, that everyone needs their privacy. L4
- 3 He was amazed to find that no one has their privacy in the hospital. L3

/'ski:.ə/

skier n.

- 1 They spotted two skiers talking to each other last night. L1
- 2 This convinced the skier that the watchdog was in a special enclosure. L1
- 3 The skier claimed to have seen the watchdog near the mountain pass. L1

/'i:stə/

Easter n.

复活节

- Can I get some privacy?

08 Story+Expressions

- connect a to b
- for hundreds of years
- Now that + 从句
- attempt to do sth.
- be in difficulty
- receive a warm welcome

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

connect a. to b. = a. be connected to b.

N2L71

- That bridge connects this tiny village to the outside world.
- Can I connect my printer to your computer?
- Will you connect this wire to the television?

for hundreds of years

- Our family has lived around here for hundreds of years.
- That is what people have been doing for hundreds of years. *The Last Word* (2017)
- Some families have farmed in this area for hundreds of years.

Now that + 从句 (原因状语从句)

Now (that) can be used as a conj. In an informal style, that is often dropped.

既然; 由于; because now...

- Now (that) I'm here, I'd better stay.
- We can go swimming every day now that the weather is warm.
- Now that the rain has stopped, we can go for a walk.

be in difficulty

- When you are in difficulty, you may ask for her help.
- She likes to help anyone who is in difficulty.
- If you are in difficulty, just give me a call.

attempt to do sth.

- Not only did he attempt to buy the house, but... as well. L5
- Do not attempt to keep the status quo. L4
- Despite the fact that he attempted to take a shower, he couldn't raise his hand. L3 L4

receive a warm welcome

- You will receive a warm welcome when you come to Beijing.
- I am sure that you will receive a warm welcome. NCE2 L78
- They were amazed to find that they received a warm welcome from the villagers. L3

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】*5
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈfæsɪneɪt/

fascinate v.

- 1 The children were fascinated by the story.
- 2 For hundreds of years, cats fascinate human being. L8
- 3 I've chased after a lot of women, but none have fascinated me like you. The Girl Most Likely to... (1973)

/əˈfekʃənət/

affectionate adj.

- 1 He is very affectionate towards his children.
- 2 This convinced me that he gave her an affectionate kiss last night. L1
- 3 I found her very affectionate. NCE2 L4

/mɪˈstɪəriəs/

mysterious adj.

- 1 The mysterious woman passenger provided the police with the evidence. L5
- 2 You must be the mysterious visitor. NCE2 L17
- 3 Imagine their dismay when they realized that the mysterious visitor was actually their cat. L7

/səbˈmɪsɪv/

submissive adj.

- 1 He was looking for a quiet submissive wife who would obey his every word. N2L28
- 2 He followed his boss like a submissive child.
- 3 did/who/why...
- 4 You would be amazed to find that most doctors want their patients to be submissive. L3

/ˈfiːlɪn/

feline adj.

- 1 There are a lot of feline mummies (made by Egyptians) in that museum. N2L29
- 2 We, human beings, have a great impact on our feline friends. L9
- 3 Our feline friend received a warm welcome from his new family members. L8

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ɪndɪˈpendəns/

independence n.

- 1 Mexico gained its independence from Spain in 1821. did/when/how...
- 2 It's important that parents should allow their children some independence.
- 3 Although I love my children, I do allow them their independence. L2

/ˈhaɪ/ˈraɪz/

high-rise adj.

- 1 It is disturbing to think that the cat may jump from a high-rise building. L1
- 2 A bus came to a stop in front of the high-rise building. L6 did/what/where/why...
- 3 I'm writing an article about high-rise buildings in New York. L5

/ˈwɪndəʊsɪl/

window sill n.

- 1 You can grow the tomatoes on a sunny window sill.
- 2 She picked up a pair of binoculars from the window sill. did/who/where...
- 3 You can grab a beer on the window sill. L6

/ˈpærətruːpə/

paratrooper n.

- 1 These young paratroopers were armed with guns. L2
- 2 Despite the fact that he became a paratrooper at a very young age, ... L3
- 3 He happened to know the young paratrooper's father. L3

/ˈskwɪrəl/

squirrel n.

- 1 They have the privilege of playing with squirrel every summer. L4
- 2 So long as there are squirrels in the park, visitors from all parts of the city will come to see them. L7
- 3 These squirrels have lived around here for hundreds of years. L8

/rɪˈzɪstəns/

air-resistance n.

- 1 [Story]: This increases their air-resistance.
- 2 does/what/how/why...
- 3 The car's speed was reduced by air resistance.
- 4 was/what/why...

/ˈɪm.pækt/

impact n.

- 1 have/make an impact on ...
- 2 I do believe you have an impact on us all. L2
- 3 Her speech made a huge impact on everyone.
- 4 Far more important, you should make an impact on them. L4

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- gained its independence
- have/make an impact on...

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

09 Grammar

the more..., the more...

It seems that the further cats fall, the less they are likely to injure themselves.

注意: 比较级部分均须在各自从句中充当成分; 将从句中某个成分变成比较级提句首。

The more they tried to make it just like home, the more they made everybody miss it.

Apocalypse Now (1979)

But the more you hate me, the more you will learn.

Full Metal Jacket (1987)

And the less noise they make, the more likely we are to use them.

Lock, Stock and Two Smoking Barrels (1998)

And the more he was away from her, the crazier he got.

Paris, Texas (1984)

You're getting close now, and the closer you get, the worse they'll be.
42 (2013)

The worse the Jews are treated, the stronger they become.

The Believer (2001)

Because the longer you wait to begin, the less likely you are to find it at all.

Dead Poets Society (1989)

The longer it takes to find her... the more dangerous she becomes.

Star Wars: The Force Awakens (2015)

You know, the longer you use them, the softer they get.

The Sure Thing (1985)

The longer I work, the more money I'll make.

Newsies (1992)

yet... conj.

(and) despite that; used to add something

that seems surprising because of what you have just said:

You can use yet to introduce a fact that is rather surprising after the previous fact you have just mentioned.

然而；但是

discourse markers

- He's overweight and bald, (and) yet somehow, he's attractive.
- I don't eat much, yet I am a size 16.
- She said she would be late, yet she arrived on time.
- He's very kind, yet I don't like him.

This was not what we wanted, and yet I felt that I had accomplished something.

Zelig (1983)

It sounds so familiar, yet I don't know what it means.

A Little Princess (1995)

A simple problem, yet I know it is difficult for you.

Rollerball (1975)

I keep saying I'm a real painter, yet I can't seem to finish anything.

Peter Rabbit (2018)

I am happy to see Spot, yet I am crying.

Under Suspicion (2000)

homework

1. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法
Study-Test Learning Pyramid
2. 反复朗读/阅读语法例句
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法
4. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

09 Story+Expressions

- lead a adj. life
- learn to do sth.
- a good deal of N2L56 a great deal of...
- be based on
- make a study of sth...
- a period of + 时间
- have sth. In common ...
- died from / died of N2L77
- there is no shortage of
- It seems that + 句子
- be likely to do sth.

lead a adj. life

- If the operation succeeds, Carly will be able to lead a normal life. N2L16&L43
- Joe had been leading a double life. N2L62
- So long as you give me the money, I'll let you go home and lead a normal life. L7

learn to do sth.

- If you don't learn to think when you are young, you may never learn. N2L19
- I learned to drive when I was 16.
- So long as you learn to think for yourself, you will be able to deal with your work. L7

a good deal of/a great deal of N2L56

- I've spent a good deal of time preparing this report. N2L59
- If you caused a good deal of trouble, your father would be very angry. N2L40
- He've made a good deal of money, and put them in the bank for safekeeping. L7

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

be based on

- All of these are based on the belief (that we can make a good deal of money in the future). N2L46
- This film is based on a true story.
- This is based on the fact (that they should have helped us). N2L46&L65

make a study of sth...

- I made a study of French culture, for I need to talk about that with my teacher tomorrow.
- As long as you make a study of the problem, you will understand more. L7

a period of + 时间

- I lived in New Zealand for a period of time.
- She spent a period of time working with people who wrote an article on cats. N2L59&28 L5
- My best friend goes to Tibet for a period of time every year. does/why/who/where...

have sth. in common...

- We did have something in common. L2
- It is disturbing to think that they have a lot more in common than I think. L1
- But despite their differences, they had one important thing in common. The Notebook (2004) L3

died from / died of N2L77

died from: 环境、事故

died of: 疾病、衰老

■When my girlfriend left me, I thought I would die from a broken heart.

■She died from an accident.

■His sister informed him that their father died from an accident. L5

(there is) no shortage of

■There's no shortage of people who are looking forward to buying these tickets. N2L28&37

■There is no shortage of restaurants in the city.

■He has no shortage of ambition or energy.

It seems that + 句子

■It seems that they know what they're doing. N2L39

■It seems that the disease is now under control. N2L62

■It seems that his father has a great impact on him. L9

be likely to do sth.

■Please remind me because I'm likely to forget.

■He informed me that the train was likely to be late. L5

■Only few people are likely to enjoy this film.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 微信公众号: jiaonangzhuxue

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/sʌʊθˈæmp tən/

Southampton

南安普顿

/kəˈlɒsəl/

colossal adj.

- 1 colossal + ship/ waste of time; money /mistake..
- 2 They set the colossal ship on fire last night. N2L95 did/who/when/why...
- 3 This is a colossal waste of time/money.
- 4 They have proved that the colossal wooden statue was built almost 100 years ago. N2L94

/ˈwɔːtətaɪt/

watertight adj.

- 1 They're doing some repairs on the church to make the roof watertight.
- 2 It seems that the bag is completely watertight. L9
- 3 So long as the door is watertight, we will be safe here. L7

/kəmˈpɑːtmənt/

compartment n. 隔间, 舱; 隔层(家具)

- 1 It is said that the desk has a secret compartment. N2L58
- 2 There was a man in my compartment last night. was/who/where/when...
- 3 They are not willing to leave the compartment. L4

/flʌd/

flood v.

- 1 Our washing machine broke down yesterday and flooded the kitchen. N2L56
- 2 The captain confirmed that all compartments were flooded. N2L87
- 3 Dan said the boys flooded the town library two months ago. The Three Gifts (2009)

/fləʊt/

float v.

- 1 They were amazed to find that some leaves were floating on the water. L3
- 2 There were twenty boats floating nearby... and only one came back. Titanic (1997)
- 3 I saw twenty boats floating on the river. N2L35

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈtrædʒɪk/

tragic adj.

- 1 She knocked him to the ground when she heard the tragic news. N2L81
- 2 He was killed in a tragic accident at the age of 24. N2L10
- 3 Imagine their dismay when they heard the tragic news. L7

/ˈlaɪnə/

liner n.

- 1 They sailed to America in a large liner.
- 2 It's an ocean liner that sails from London to New York. The Parent Trap (1998)
- 3 The ocean liner set out from Miami. N2L12
- 4 He was a waiter working on an ocean liner. N2L30

/ˈvɔɪ.ɪdʒ/

voyage n.

- 1 I think she was a passenger on our last voyage.
- 2 Hope you have a happy voyage to Hong Kong.
- 3 I thought that you and your friends would be resting after that long voyage.

/ˈaɪs.bɜːg/

iceberg n.

- 1 The captain was convinced that the ship hit an iceberg. L1
- 2 The captain claimed to have seen the iceberg. L1
- 3 The captain woke up with a start, realizing that the ship hit an iceberg. L2 N2L49&L20

/ˈlʊk.aʊt/

lookout n.

- 1 A lookout spotted a huge iceberg moving in front of the ship. L1
- 2 One lookout claimed to have seen the iceberg. L1
- 3 [Story]: A huge iceberg was suddenly spotted by a lookout. was/what/who/ when...

/kəˈlɪʒən/

collision n.

- 1 The pilot avoided a collision by changing course. did/who/how/when...
- 2 They have one thing in common. They were all injured in a collision. L9
- 3 It seems that they were all injured in the collision. L9

/ˈnærəʊli/

narrowly adv.

- 1 It is said that Alan narrowly avoided an accident. N2L58
- 2 He was narrowly knocked down by his opponent. was/who/when...
- 3 It was Leo that narrowly escaped, not you. N2L58

/mɪs/

miss v.

- 1 The bullet narrowly missed her heart.
- 2 I'm so hungry, for I missed lunch.
- 3 He threatened to kill him, and the bullet missed him by two inches. N2L62

/slaɪt/

slight adj.

- 1 He's got a headache and a slight fever, for he works too hard recently.
- 2 She looked at him with a slight smile. did/who/when/why/who...
- 3 I should warn you, Barnabas, there's a slight chance it won't work. Dark Shadows (2012)

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/ˈtrem.bəl/

tremble v.

- 1 It seems that his whole body was trembling. L9
- 2 You needn't have said that to her, because her whole body is trembling now. N2L41
- 3 Trembling with fear, she handed over the money to the him. N2L49

/feɪnt/

faint adj.

- 1 faint noise/voice/sound/light...
- 2 We heard a faint noise coming from the room. N2L47
- 3 I could see a faint light, and I decided to try to reach it.
- 4 Leo detected a faint smell of perfume as she entered the room.

/ˈhɒrə/

horror n. to sb's horror 使某人惊恐

- 1 To my horror, I discovered that my passport was missing. N2L81
- 2 Leo pointed out that they watched a Japanese horror movie last night together. N2L58
- 3 People watched in horror as the small plane crashed to the ground.

/əˈbændən/

abandon v.

- 1 We realized that we ran out of petrol, and had to abandon the car. N2L88
- 2 We don't know what caused him to abandon his dog. N2L88
- 3 When the captain realized that the ship hit the iceberg, he ordered his men to abandon the ship. N2L43

/plʌndʒ/

plunge v.

1 His parents forbid him to plunge into the cold water. N2L51

2 Our dog has a habit of plunging into the water. N2L59

3 Hey, don't even try to plunge into the river, and make a spectacle of yourself. N2L96

/laɪf.bəʊt/

lifeboat n.

1 There was only room for ten people in the lifeboat.

2 The lifeboats were likely to hit the iceberg. L9

3 The man who owns a lifeboat received a warm welcome from everybody. L8

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- to sb's horror
- horror movie

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

10 Story+Expressions

- a crew of
- be regarded as
- give an alarm
- in time
- realized to his horror that
- give an order

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

a crew of

a group of people who work together, especially all those who work on and operate a ship, aircraft, etc. 一组人员; 一组(工作人员);

- They made a study of a crew of 700 workers on the ship. L9
- A crew of painters went into the building next door. Code of Silence (1985) did/who/ where/when/why...
- This story is based on a crew of seven men. L9

a. be regarded as b. a.被认为/视为 b.

- The man (who you saw last night) was regarded as dangerous by the police. N2L28
- It may be regarded as a threat. N2L19
- She was regarded as the most beautiful woman in this country.

give an alarm 报警; 告警; 警告

- As soon as the alarm was given, everyone rushed to the lifeboats.
- Now that the alarm is given, ... L8
- So long as you give an alarm, ...L7

in time / on time NCE2L87

- Do you think you can get there in time? 1917 (2019)
- No one is likely to get there in time. L9
- You'll be in time if you hurry. N2L16

realized to his horror that+句子

- Leo realized to his horror that two of his cats had died from the fire accident. L9
- Leo realized to his horror that the movie was actually based on his story. L9
- He suddenly realized to his horror that the brakes weren't working.

give an order

- The captain gave the order to abandon ship.
- The order(to build a bridge)was given.
- The captain immediately gave an order to send out a signal for rescue. did/who/why...

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈɡɪl.ti/

guilty adj. 有罪的; 内疚的 **feel guilty/bad**

- 1 Imagine Leo's dismay when he found that John had a guilty look on his face. L7
- 2 Leo has proved that he is guilty. N2L94
- 3 If I didn't apologize, I'd feel guilty. N2L40
- 4 I feel really guilty about forgetting her birthday again.

/ˈtɒlə.rənt/

tolerant adj. be tolerant of

- 1 He is tolerant of those who don't agree with him. N2L28
- 2 They learn to be tolerant of other people. L9
- 3 I'm a tolerant man but your behaviour is more than I can bear.

/dɪˈkleə/

declare v.

- 1 Do you have anything to declare?
- 2 If you have nothing to declare, go through the green channel.
- 3 He should have declared that new computer. N2L65

/ˈhɑː.dənd/

hardened adj.

If you describe someone as hardened, you mean that they have had so much experience of something bad or unpleasant that they are no longer affected by it in the way that other people would be. 铁石心肠的; 麻木不仁的; 经验丰富的

- 1 Society does not know how to deal with hardened criminals. L7
- 2 We don't know how he became a hardened criminal.
- 3 It is disturbing to think that a hardened criminal is still at large in the city. L1

/prəˈfeʃənəl/

professional adj. n.

- 1 The woman (who gets enough money to buy the big house) is a professional actress. L2
- 2 Her father was amazed to find that she wanted to become a professional cook. L3
- 3 Would you mind my giving you some professional advice? N2L68

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈsmʌɡ.lə/

smuggler n.

- 1 If you had hired a real smuggler instead of Andy, we would have got that diamond. N2L64
- 2 Mr. Pan is said to be a smuggler. N2L58
- 3 The smuggler realized to his horror that the police was waving to him. L10 N2L14

/əˈfɪʃəs/

officious adj.

- 1 No body likes him in the company, for he's an officious little man.
- 2 I moved because I can't stand the officious landlord any more.
- 3 I'm glad that the officious little man has finally left. L2

/ˈkɒn.fɪ.dənt.li/

confidently adv.

- 1 "I won't let you down," he replied confidently.
- 2 I can confidently say that he can keep the secret. L4
- 3 "I'm accustomed to working 12 hours a day" he said confidently. N2L94

/ˈdred.fəl/

dreadful adj.

- 1 They were reluctant to tell us the dreadful news. N2L94
- 2 It was Leo who told me a dreadful story. N2L58
- 3 She is such a dreadful woman that no one is willing to help her. N2L35 L4

/paʊns/

pounce v.

- 1 She pounced at the phone when it rang because she was worried about her husband.
- 2 We hid behind the bushes, and ready to pounce on the smugglers.
- 3 The puma knows when to pounce. N2L50

/ˈpɜː.fjuːm/

perfume n.

- 1 Can I borrow some of your perfume?
- 2 All these perfume have one thing in common. L9
- 3 Leo realized to his horror that he had just broken his girlfriend's favorite perfume. L10

/sɑːˈkæstɪkəli/

sarcastically adv.

- 1 "Oh great," he said sarcastically.
- 2 Jane discovered that John was smiling sarcastically at her. N2L81
- 3 "Thanks so much for your help, " Tim said sarcastically.

/ɪgˈzempt/

exempt adj.

- 1 He was exempted from military service.
- 2 Charities are exempted from paying the tax.
- 3 Some students are exempt from certain exams.

/ˈdʒuː.ti/

import duty n.

- 1 He bought his wife some duty-free perfume.
- 2 I bought you something in the duty free (shop). did/who/why/when...
- 3 Jane realized to his horror that all the duty free shops were closed. L10

/dʒel/

gel n.

- 1 hair gel
- 2 Why don't you use some hair gel?
- 3 This kind of hair gel is very popular among young people. N2L94
- 4 He was too embarrassed to buy the hair gel. L4

- feel guilty
- be tolerant of
- be exempted from
- mixture of a. and b.

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/ˈmɪks.tʃə/

mixture n.

- 1 The city is a mixture of old and new buildings. mixture of a. and b.
- 2 We listened to the news with a mixture of surprise and horror.
- 3 They looked at him with a mixture of horror, envy, and surprise.

/ʌnˈskruː/

unscrew v.

- 1 I can't unscrew the top of this jar – it's really tight. – Cambridge
- 2 He provided me with a bottle of water, but I can't unscrew the cap. L5
- 3 Leo was relieved to hear that they managed to unscrew the cap. N2L84&L67

/ˈnɒs.treɪl/

nostril n.

- 1 They call me gorilla L, for my nostrils look quite big. L4
- 2 Your nostrils always move when you lie.
- 3 They were instructed to put the bottle to their nostrils. L5

/tʃɔːk/

chalk n.

/ˈbæɡɪdʒ/

baggage n.

- 1 Leo realized to his horror that he couldn't find his baggage. L10
- 2 I'm gonna have the baggage sent out later. N2L66
- 3 baggage claim N2L58
- 4 I'll meet you in baggage claim.

11 Story+Expressions

- be made to do
- on the other hand
- light up
- be greeted by something

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

be made to do / to be forced to do something:

- I was made to wait four hours before I was examined by a doctor.
- Jim was made to work all night by his boss.
- We were made to attend meetings every day. why/who...

on the other hand / on the one hand 一方面

- I want to go to the party, but on the other hand I should study tonight.
- On the other hand, my father has a great impact on me. L9
- On the other hand, we are not allowed to chew gum at work. N2L10

light up: to make or become happy.

- Her face lit up when she saw him.
- Tom will really light up when he sees his new bike.
- When my mom walked into the room, my dad would just... light up.
The Nine Lives of Christmas (2014)

be greeted by something

greet: (of sights, sounds or smells) to be the first thing that you see, hear or smell at a particular time (景象、声音或气味) 映入...的眼帘; 传入...的耳中(或鼻中)

- When she opened the door she was greeted by a scene of utter confusion.
- As we walked into the house, we were greeted by a wonderful smell of baking.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈdezət/ /ˈaɪ.lənd/

desert island

1 If you were on a desert island, what would you miss most? N2L40

2 He woke up with a start, and realized to his horror that he was on a desert island alone.

L2 L10

3 When he got back from the desert island, he received a warm welcome. L8

/ʌn.rɪəˈlɪs.tɪk/

unrealistic adj.

1 This demand proved unrealistic. L1

2 I don't think anything is unrealistic if you believe you can do it.

3 I found it rather unrealistic. N2L4

/ˈpærədəɪs/

paradise n.

1 They moved to the countryside hoping to find paradise. N2L49

2 I'm looking forward to seeing this countryside paradise. N2L37

3 It seems that this place is a paradise for wildlife. L9

/ˈretʃɪd/

wretched adj. unpleasant or of low quality:

1 They live in wretched conditions, for...

2 She finally agreed to have the wretched animal killed. N2L65&L66

3 They've spent their lives in this wretched place for 10 years. It's time to move out.

/ˈstɑːv/

starve v.

1 Thousands of people will starve if food doesn't reach the city. N2L16

2 She must be starving, for she looks pale and weak. N2L17

3 If all men were like you, I'd starve to death. The Front Page (1974) N2L40

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈelɪmənt/

element n. 要素; 成分

1 There's an element of truth in his story / in what you say.

2 My boss proved that cost was a key element in our decision. N2L94

3 There's always an element of danger in mountain climbing.

/ˌɒpəˈtjuːnəti/

opportunity n.

1 They must regard it as an opportunity for a new start. L10

2 I had an opportunity to go to New York and study.

3 We'll have an opportunity to meet Leo in the future.

/ˈkɒrəl/

coral n.

1 [Story]: on a coral island

2 Now, you have an opportunity to stay on a coral island alone for ten days.

3 It was not long before they found out that she was interested in coral. N2L20&L75

4 So long as you like coral,... L7

Virgin Islands

维尔京群岛

/maɪˈæmi/

Miami n.

迈阿密

/ˈdɪŋ.gɪ/

dinghy n.

- 1 I don't know which dinghy he's talking about. *Impractical Jokers: The Movie* (2020)
- 2 Now that we got a dinghy, we can sail to the other bank of the river. L8
- 3 Is a dinghy different from a boat? N2L56

/kəˈrɪ.bi.ən/

Caribbean n.

加勒比海地区

/spiə/

spear gun

- 1 I don't know how to use a spear gun.
- 2 You needn't have used that spear gun. N2L41
- 3 If you had used that spear gun, we would have caught that fish. N2L64

/ˈlɒb.stə/

lobster n.

- 1 They caught sight of one small lobster on the beach. L2 did/who/what/where/when...
- 2 He managed to get enough money to buy a big lobster, and cooked it for me. N2L67 L2
- 3 We should have bought that big lobster. N2L65

/ˈtæŋ.kə/

tanker n.

- 1 [Story] a passing tanker rescued them...
- 2 It is fortunate that a passing tanker rescued them. N2L65
- 3 He became a captain 5 years ago, and had an opportunity to drive a tanker.
- 4 On the other hand, his family owns two tankers. L11

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈdʒenju.ɪn.li/

genuinely adv.

- 1 I am genuinely sorry about that.
- 2 On the other hand, he genuinely cares about his employees. L11
- 3 Do you just genuinely dislike me, henry? *Dedication* (2007)
- 4 Sb. be genuinely sorry that + 句子
- 5 I'm genuinely sorry that I attempted to v. L8

- have an opportunity to do sth.
- an element of truth/danger
- starve to death
- Sb. be genuinely sorry that+句子

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】 每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

12 Story+Expressions

- formed an unrealistic picture of a.
- imagine sth. to be n./adj.
- a sort of
- quite the opposite
- wish that+句子
- load a. with b.
- as sb. put it...

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

formed an unrealistic picture of a.

- Most of us have formed an unrealistic picture of life abroad.
- have/why/who/what...
- People (who do manual work) often form an unrealistic picture of people's life (who work in offices). L4

imagine sth./sb. to be n./adj.

- She might imagine that to be quite an achievement.
- She imagines herself to be a true artist.
- I imagine it to be something like, Father. Robin Hood (2018)

a sort of

a sort of sth: used for describing something in a not very exact way 意为“近似于某物，有点像是某物”，表示不十分确定

- He is a sort of person who doesn't care what other people think.
- He's a sort of guy who leads a normal life. L9
- She was jumping around like some sort of kangaroo.

quite the opposite

- Quite the opposite, actually. It's lovely. Bad Times at the El Royale (2018)
- Quite the opposite, we have a great opportunity to make it official. L12 N2L71
- Quite the opposite, I need some privacy right now.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

wish that+句子 中级红皮书U41&39&40

wish that+句子 (虚拟语气):

1. did — 表现在
2. had done — 表过去

- I wish I knew how to deal with the problem. L7
- I wish you didn't have to go now.
- I wish I'd known about the party.
- It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't said it.

load a. with b.

- She loaded the car with all sorts of food. N2L63
- Two men were loading a truck with boxes of paper.
- Trucks (loaded with food and medicine) waited at the airport. N2L30

As sb. put it... used for giving the exact words that someone uses (正如某人所谈)

- As John put it, 'Life would be nice if we didn't have to work'. N2L40
- They practice their English everyday, and as Leo put it “practice, practice and practice”
- As Leo put it, “???”

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈkɒs.tʃuːm/

costume n.

- 1 You looked really cute in your costume.
The Perks of Being a Wallflower (2012)
- 2 Leo informed me that he could lend you the costume. N2L85
- 3 We'll be going to a costume party tonight. N2L13

/kənˈsɪst/

consist v.

- 1 consist of ...由...组成
- 2 It was obvious that the book consists of nineteen chapters. N2L51
- 3 The crowd consisted mostly of college kids and office workers.
- 4 This thing consists of sugar and water.

/ʃi:t/

sheet n.

- 1 She realized to her horror that the sheet was covered with puma fur. L10
- 2 I should have bought that new sheet. N2L65
- 3 Now that you get your new sheet, don't eat on the bed again. L8

/ɪˈfektɪv/

effective adj.

- 1 They find Leo's English class very effective. N2L4
- 2 Imagine Leo's dismay when he found out that the new plan was not very effective. L7
- 3 It's not as effective as the new method, but it seems to be working. N2L91

/ˈkʌm.fə.tə.bəl/

comfortable adj.

- 1 She complained of these new shoes all day, for they are not very comfortable. N2L59
- 2 She made herself comfortable in a big chair.
- 3 Those must be comfortable shoes.
Forrest Gump (1994) N2L17

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈstɔːr.uːm/

storeroom n.

- 1 She claimed to have seen a rat in the storeroom. L1
- 2 They've decided to turn that into a storeroom. N2L66
- 3 This is the storeroom where we keep everything.
Edward Scissorhands (1990) N2L55

/ɪlekˈtrɪsɪti/ /ˈmiː.tə/

electricity n. metre n.

- 1 Turn off the lights, for it wastes electricity.
- 2 I'm confident that the electricity meter is under the stairs. N2L55
- 3 I don't know how to read the electricity meter. N2L50

/peɪs/

pace n.

- 1 Normally you can let the people leave the theater at their own pace. Matinee (1993)
- 2 [Story]: The man jumped back several paces. did/who/why/when...
- 3 The pace of life is much slower in New Zealand.
- 4 I'm used to the fast pace of life. N2L79

/fli:/ /fled/

flee fled v.

- 1 to escape by running away, especially because of danger or fear
- 2 John spent six months in prison before fleeing the country. N2L49
- 3 When police arrived on the scene, the two men had fled. N2L75
- 4 When John saw the police car, he turned around and fled. N2L49

/s'læm/

slam v. close

- 1 He slammed the door so hard that all the windows were smashed to pieces. N2L35 L6
- 2 He ran out of the house, slamming the door as he left.
- 3 [Story]: He fled, slamming the door behind him.
- 4 He slammed the door behind him and fled.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- consist of ...
- make yourself comfortable
- at your own pace
- The pace of life

homework

1. 单词造句/对话 【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

13 Story+Expressions

- fancy dress party
- be impatient to do sth.
- let out a cry

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

fancy dress party

- Nobody told me tonight was fancy dress! Easy Virtue (2008)
- Did you hear about the man who went to the fancy dress party alone last night?
- We'll all have an opportunity to go to the fancy dress party tonight. L12

be impatient to do sth.

be eager to do sth. N2L57

- He was really impatient to see you last week. was/why/who/when...
- He was really impatient to go to that fancy dress party.
- He must be impatient to get back home. N2L17

let out a cry

- When she saw him, she let out a cry of horror.
- Letting out a cry, she... N2L49
- I wish that she had let out a cry. L12

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/'gæŋ.stə/

gangster n.

- 1 The gangster movies have a great impact on him. L9
- 2 The movie is based on the true story of a London gangster. L9
- 3 All these gangsters have one thing in common. L9

/ʃi'kɑ:geɪ/

Chicago n.

芝加哥

/prə'tek.fən/

protection n.

- 1 It seems that she needs protection. L9
- 2 This ought to have provided protection for all my family members. N2L65
- 3 I couldn't tell you, it was for your own protection! A Beautiful Mind (2001)

/'prɒptli/

promptly adv. immediately / on time

- 1 at the right time without being late: on time; punctually
- 2 She arrived promptly last night. did/who/when...
- 3 He paid the money back promptly. N2L11
- 4 She always pays her bills on time (promptly). N2L18
- 5 We'll have to leave promptly (= on time) if we want to catch that train.

/'dɪstrɔɪ/

destroy v.

- 1 The school was completely destroyed by fire. N2L10
- 2 The plane was completely destroyed when it hit a mountain.
- 3 The building was destroyed by fire in 2004. was/what/how/why/when...

/'rɪ:mɑ:kə.bəl/

remarkable adj.

- 1 unusual or surprising and therefore deserving attention or praise 非凡的; 显著的; 引人注目的; 不寻常的
- 2 She has made remarkable progress. N2L88
- 3 My daughter's quite a remarkable woman. The Carer (2016)
- 4 You must told me how you met these remarkable people in India. N2L39

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/bænd/

band n.

- 1 A band of solders were armed with guns and marched towards the building. L2
- 2 We need a small band of volunteers to help the children in the hospital.
- 3 A band of smugglers were amazed to find that the police was waving to them. L3

/'flɒrəns/ /'flɒrəntaɪn/

Florence n. Florentine n.

佛罗伦萨; 佛罗伦萨人

/'stet/

city-state n.

- 1 A city-state is an independent city — and sometimes its surrounding land — which has its own government, completely separate from nearby countries.
- 2 In fact, well-known cities such as Rome and Athens were city-states, and the entire country of Italy was made up of independent merchant city-states during the Renaissance.

/'haɪə/

hire(UK) v. 雇用; 租用, 租借 rent (US)

- 1 I was hired by one of the biggest company in the world.
- 2 We should have hired(rented) a car last night. N2L65
- 3 Imagine their surprise when they find out that the company has just hired 250 new staff. L7

/'prɪns/

prince n. (son王子/male ruler君主)

- 1 A prince is the son of a king.
- 2 A prince is a male ruler of a small country or state.
- 3 The prince realized to his horror that a band of soldiers were right in front of him. L10
- 4 I wish I knew an ancient Italian prince. L12

/ˈfjuː.nə.rəl/

funeral n. gave him a state funeral

1 The funeral will be held at St. Martin’s Church next Friday. N2L21 will/where/when...

2 He asked him to make a speech at the funeral. N2L63

3 He got so drunk that he even missed the funeral. N2L35

/ˈdedɪkeɪt/

dedicate v. (书, 电影, 作品) 献给; 奉献

1 dedicate yourself /your life to something 献身于某事

2 The actress now dedicates herself to children’s charity work.

3 Leo dedicates his life to education.

4 dedicate something to somebody 把某物献给某人

5 The book was dedicated to her husband.

6 devote oneself to sth. / doing sth. N2L85

/ˈmeməri/

memory n. 记忆力; 回忆; 纪念 (逝者)

1 I have a good memory and am able to remember things clearly. N2L43

2 She talked about her memories of the war last night. did/who/why/when/what...

3 in memory of sb. / to the memory of sb. 作为对某人的纪念

4 The monument is dedicated to the memory of the people's heroes.

/ˈvæliənt/

valiant adj.

1 very brave, especially in a difficult situation

2 Despite valiant efforts, firemen were not able to save the house. N2L43

3 This convinced him that he was the valiant soldier who saved his life. L1 N2L28

4 The valiant soldier has an opportunity to meet the President. L12

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- need protection
- provide protection
- for your own protection
- a band of
- give him a state funeral
- dedicate yourself/your life to something
- dedicate something to somebody
- devote oneself to sth. / doing sth. N2L85
- in memory of sb. / to the memory of sb.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

14 Grammar

when 引导的定语从句

1

复习: NCE2

L28 [who which that whom]

- He is the man.
- I met him yesterday. (who that 省略)
- He is the man (who) I met yesterday.

L55 [whose where]

- I met a man.
- His sister knows you.
- I met a man whose sister knows you.

L77 [非限定性定语从句]

NCE2教学视频&课堂笔记

when 引导的定语从句

1. when定从修饰的是时间n. (day, year, time ...)

2. when 必须在其引导的【定从】中做时间状语

即when替代定从中的时间状语

- I'll never forget the day.
- I met you at that day. (when)
- I'll never forget the day when I met you.

- He wasn't looking forward to the time.
- He would have to leave at that time. (when)
- He wasn't looking forward to the time when he would have to leave.

- Tuesday was the day.
- Jake went to London on Tuesday. (when)
- Tuesday was the day when Jake went to London.

I look forward to the day when police officers are no longer referred to as pigs.

Zodiac (2007)

Never thought I'd see the day when my own father would bow before the king of Atlantis.

Aquaman (2018)

It is the day when a boy becomes a man.

Sixty Six (2006)

I'm looking forward to the day when all this bullshit is over and I don't have to talk to people like you.

Widows (2018)

This is the day when your world changes forever.

London Has Fallen (2016)

It was the time when I learned what really happened to my mum.

On Chesil Beach (2017)

2

when 引导的定语从句

1. when 定从修饰的是时间n. (day, year, time ...)

2. when 必须在其引导的【定从】中做时间状语

即when 替代定从中的时间状语

■ I'll never forget the time which I spent on campus.

■ I'll never forget the time.

■ I spent the time on campus. (which that)

■ I'll never forget the day when we first met in the park.

■ I'll never forget the day.

■ We first met in the park at that day. (when)

注意区分修饰时间时:

when 与 which 定从中缺少主语宾语 (which) or 时间状语 (when)

when 引导的定语从句

[when] is often replaced by that or dropped in an informal style —
“Practical English Usage”

- Come and see us any time (that) you're in town.
- I'll never forget the day (that) we met.
- That was the year (that) I first went abroad.
- I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day (that) I'm going away.

I will never forget the day that they stormed in our house and took
our paintings off the wall.

Woman in Gold (2015)

That was the year that everything happened.

Daydream Nation (2010)

He's been pressing me since the day you arrived here.

when 引导的定语从句

注意区分 when 时间状语从句 VS 定语从句

例子:

- My dad and I used to come here all the time when I was a little kid.

Wish for Christmas (2016)

all the time : 总是; 一直

提醒: 结合上下文读懂含义要比记住套路更重要

when 引导的定语从句

prep.+which = when

- I'll never forget the day when I first met you.
- I'll never forget the day on which I first met you.
- He wasn't looking forward to the time when(at which)he would have to leave.
- Do you know the date when(by which) we have to hand in the essay?

homework

1. 尝试回忆并给自己讲解一遍今天的核心语法 Study-Test & Learning Pyramid
2. 反复朗读/阅读语法例句
3. 尝试翻阅红皮书(中级) 通过目录或索引(Index) 查找到本课语法

14 Story+Grammar

if真实条件句VS虚拟语气

NCE2 L16 & L40 & L64 教学视频&课堂笔记

L16: If do/does ..., will do... 现在真实

▪ If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.

L50: If did/were..., would do... 现在虚拟

▪ If I saw him, I'd apologize to him.

L64: If had done ..., would have done... 过去虚拟

▪ If I had been hungry, I would have eaten something.

?: If the money was not paid promptly, the gangsters would quickly put a man out of business...

if真实条件句VS虚拟语气

过去真实:

If did ..., did...

When we are not talking about unreal situations, we use the same tenses with if as with other conjunctions. Present tenses are used to refer to the present, past tenses to the past. —“Practical English Usage”

▪ If Jack didn't come to work yesterday, he was probably ill.

▪ If the money was not paid promptly, the gangsters would quickly put a man out of business...

if真实条件句VS虚拟语气

如何区分? 过去真实:

If did..., did...

现在虚拟

If did/were..., would do...

If the money was not paid promptly, the gangsters would quickly put a man out of business...

结合上下文

have sth. done N2L66 L2

- “叫别人为你做某事”

Lisa had the roof repaired.

Sarah is having her hair cur.

- “意外或不幸的遭遇”

Gary had his nose broken in a fight.

I had my bike stolen last night.

whenever

- 1 复习:L2 on earth 究竟:When ever (whenever) did you see her?
- 2 时间状语从句: 同when, 语气更强。 翻译:每当, 每次 every time
- 3 让步状语从句:同no matter when。 翻译:无论何时 any time

- You may leave whenever you please.
- Always lock your car whenever you leave it.
- Whenever you see an officer, you must salute.
- I'll discuss it with you whenever you like.
- Whenever will I make you understand that smoking is bad for you?
- He goes there whenever he has time.

homework

1. 复习新概念第二册 语法 查阅教学视频视频 查中级红皮书(开篇视频)
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

14 Expressions

- There was a time when + 句子
- pay money to sb.
- large sums of money
- put sb. out of business
- as long ago as
- make the remarkable discovery that + 句子
- would rather do sth. than do sth.
- make a name for himself
- come to do sth.
- a. be known to b. as c.
- a. be known as b.
- be at war with ...
- In times of peace
- offer to do sth.
- make money
- regard a. as b.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

There was a time when + 句子

- There was a time when I was so shy, and I wouldn't even respond when someone said "Hello" to me.
- There was a time when they trusted me. I kept their secret.
Dylan Dog: Dead of Night (2010)

There was a time when I thought I understood you.
Hitchcock (2012)

There was a time when I thought I had to explain myself to you, but that time is long gone.
Wind (1992)

There was a time when Johnny said he was going to leave her.
We Think the World of You (1988)

There was a time when I thought I would never have a family again.
This Town (2020)

I mean, at least we're working together like a team. There was a time when I didn't even think our marriage was gonna last any more, because we didn't have anything in common.
Comic Book Villains (2002)

pay money to sb.

- The owners of shops have just paid 1,000 to him so that he won't destroy their stores. N2L59
- They said that I should take it seriously, and pay 1,000 to him. L1

large sums of money

- I was able to persuade them to give us large sums of money. N2L54
- He lent us large sums of money. N2L3
- He managed to borrow large sums of money from Leo. N2L11&L67

out of business

- They're trying to put us out of business. The Irishman (2019)
- It seems that they want to put you out of business. L9
- You'll be out of business by Easter.

as long ago as+时间 / long ago + as...as 早在

- Did you know that coffee was first used and grown in Yemen, as long ago as the 10th century?
- As long ago as 1998, Leo started to read English books and watched horror movies. L10

make the (remarkable) discovery that+句子

N2L81 sb. discovered that + 句子

- They made the (remarkable) discovery that...
- Leo went to a fancy dress party last night. L13
- Leo loaded his car with money. L12
- Leo felt guilty about that. L11

would rather do sth. than do sth.

- I'd rather stay at home tonight than go to the cinema.
- I'd rather eat at home than go to a restaurant.
- I'd rather die than apologize to Helen. L16

make a name for oneself

- She is trying to make a name for herself as an artist.
- If you had made a name for yourself, you would have gone there too. N2L64
- If you want to make a name for yourself, you must make an impact on other people. L9

come to do sth.

- to begin to have a feeling
or opinion ; to start to do something: 开始做某事
come to do (think、believe、know、understand、realize、expect、accept、regard)
- He came to think of Italy as his home.
 - I came to believe that he was innocent after all.
 - I've come to like her over the months.
 - When we moved to England, I hated the cold winters, but now I've come to appreciate the changing seasons.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

a. be known to b. as c.

- a. 被b.熟知(出名)并称之(作为)为c.
- Cranston is known to the underworld as the Shadow. Thieves Like Us (1974)
- He is known to me as a big liar.

a. be known as b. 以...著称

- She was known as the 'Iron Lady'.
- Leo used to be known as “The best Teacher”. N2L31

be at war with...

- It comes as a surprise to learn that they are at war with each other. N2L90
- The country has been at war with its neighbour for two years. have+done
- You complain about others every day. It's like you are at war with the world. N2L24

In times of peace

- In times of peace, people are more likely to watch horror movie. L9 L10
- are/why/when...
- In times of peace, everybody has an opportunity to run a small business. L12

offer to do sth.

- to say that you are willing to do something for somebody 主动提出做某事
- The kids offered to wash the dishes.
- Leo offered to teach them English.
- He wasn't forced to help me. He offered to do it. L20

make money

- So long as you can make enough money, she will not leave you. L7
- Such is human nature, that everybody wants to make a lot of money. L4
- She is amazed to find that her husband can make large sums of money. L3 L14

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

regard a. as b. = a. be regarded as b. L10

- He regards himself as a good father and a great husband.
- People regarded her as the most beautiful woman in this country.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ə'pri:ʃi.əɪt/

appreciate v.

1 used to thank someone in a polite way or to say that you are grateful for something they have done.

2 I appreciate your honesty. Dallas Buyers Club (2013)

understanding/interest/concern/ support/ patience/trust/time/help/it/that...

/'pɒkɪt/

pocket money

1 Leo asked for pocket money from his mom every Friday when he was young. N2L6

2 How much pocket money do you get?

3 To the little child's horror, he found that he had lost all his pocket money. L10

4 There was no shortage of pocket money when he was a little boy. L9

/'rætl/

rattle v.

1 All the windows rattled in the wind last night. did/what/when...

2 Keys rattled in his pocket as he walked.

3 There's something rattling inside the washing machine.

/'θrɪf.tɪ/

thrifty adj.

1 using money carefully and wisely

2 He persuaded me to be more thrifty. N2L54

3 Mrs Jones was a very thrifty woman who never wasted anything. N2L28

4 They have plenty of money now, but they are still very thrifty. N2L12

/'neɪfju: /

nephew n.

1 My nephew and Leo have a lot in common. L9

2 Her nephew died from a car accident last year. L9

3 He always regards you as his nephew. L14

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/bəʊns/

bounce v.

1 [Story]: The coin bounced along the road. did/what/when/why...

2 Her hair bounced when she walked.

3 The children were bouncing a ball in the garden when they walked in.

/'peɪv.mənt/

pavement n.

British English a hard level surface or path at the side of a road for people to walk on. sidewalk American English.

1 A small group of journalists waited on the pavement outside her house. N2L13

did/ where/who/why/when...

2 As she fell off the bike, her head hit the pavement.

3 We should have sat down on the pavement. N2L65

/'stɪk/ /stʌk/

stick-stuck-stuck

1 Leo realized to his horror that the wheels were stuck in the mud. L10

2 The little boy's arm was stuck in the mud.

3 whose/why/where...

/'brɪ:geɪd/

fire brigade n.

1 When the police arrived on the scene, took one look and called the fire brigade. N2L75

2 They had to call the fire brigade, for the house was full of smoke. N2L7&L17

3 We don't want to call the fire brigade until we have to.

/grɪ:s/

grease n.

- 1 This cup is full of grease. N2L7
- 2 It was my right hand that was covered with oil and grease. N2L75&L58
- 3 You have a grease spot on your shirt.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- I appreciate your honesty.
- understanding/interest/concern/support/patience/ trust/time/help/it/that...

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

15 Story+Expressions

- supply of
- go a long way
- be exchanged for sth. exchange a. for b.
- fill up sth.
- find one's way...
- advise sb. to do sth.
- On one's way to sw.
- roll up one's sleeves
- What is more=what's more
- rub a. with b.
- a special type of sth.
- hear about sth.
- reward sb. with sth.

supply of

- There was a plentiful supply of books and magazines to read.
- The hospital keeps a large supply of blood. ■ Whenever she goes out with her baby, she always takes a large supply of baby food with her.

go a long way

- (of money, food, etc.) to last a long time
- To achieve considerable success.
- All parents hope that their children will go a long way in their lives.
- The moment I met him I knew he would go a long way. N2L60

习惯 用法	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句 指南	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

be exchanged for sth. = exchange a. for b.

- Money can be exchanged for goods or services. N2L21
- All the cans of beans will be exchanged for money. N2L21
- Where can I exchange my dollars for pounds?
- If you are unhappy with the jacket, you can always take it back and exchange it for another one.
- I exchanged those trousers for a larger size.

fill up sth.

- I need to fill up with petrol before we go.
- It seems that they have filled up the gas tank. L9
- Not only did they fill up the glasses,... L5

advise sb. to do sth.

- He happened to meet Evans last night and advised him to leave London. L3
- The doctor advised him to lose weight and exercise more. did/who/why...
- Leo advised me to turn off the background music last night. L6

On one's way to sw.

- On my way to your house, I grabbed a coffee for both of us. L6
- I saw Leo teaching English on my way to school. N2L35
- On my way to school, Leo explained everything to me. N2L33

roll up one's sleeves

- He would take off his jacket, roll up his sleeves, and play Ping-Pong with the kids.
- She rolled up her sleeves, and realized to her horror that her arms were covered with blood. L10
- She rolled up her sleeves and started washing.

What is more=what's more

used to add something surprising or interesting to what you have just said used to add a point that is even more important 而且; 另外; 更重要的是

- What's more, I know who did it. Hot Fuzz (2007)
- What's more, he will be coming with you tonight. N2L13
- And what's more, you need to explain that to me. N2L33

rub a. with b.

- She began rubbing her hair with a towel. N2L27
- She has a habit of rubbing her feet with lotion every night. N2L59
- He was reluctant to rub her feet with lotion. N2L94

a special type of sth.

- He became an expert at making this special type of butter. N2L59
- This special type of butter was used to make something that you never eat before. N2L55
- He was accustomed to eating a special type of butter. N2L94

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

hear about sth.

- I'd heard about your injury from your mom, but I didn't realize it was so bad. N2L20
- Instead of knowing that immediately. Teresa heard about the decision later. N2L20
- It seems that people want to write and hear about bad, negative news. L9

reward sb. with sth.

- The captain rewarded him with a free ticket. did/who/why...
- The captain advised me to reward him with more money.
- We would like to reward you with a free seat in first class. Elizabethtown (2005)

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/praɪz/

prize adj.

something that is very valuable or important to have

1 [Story]: One of Mary's prize possessions was a little white limb. what/why...

2 prize money: money offered or received as a prize.

3 If you want, you can keep the prize money. N2L16

4 Leo realized to his horror that he had lost all the prize money. L10

/taɪ/

tie v.

1 tie sb. to sth. = sb. be tied to sth.

2 They tied him to a tree. = He was tied to a tree by them.

3 When he woke up again, he was tied to the bed in the hospital. N2L27

4 After they were tied to chairs, John...

/ə'kjuz/

accuse v.

1 accuse sb. of doing sth.

2 We do have one thing in common, for Smith accused us of lying. L2&L9

3 Are you accusing her of lying?

4 It seems that you are accusing me of stealing. L9

/θeft/

theft n.

1 He was accused of theft and murder.

2 They are accused of theft from a small shop.

3 The movie is based on a true story, and it is about theft. L9

/di'naɪ/

deny v.

1 deny doing ... / sb. deny that + 句子

2 Two men have denied murdering a woman at the edge of a forest. N2L44

3 The police informed Leo that she denied taking the money. L5

4 You can't deny that it seems a very great idea.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ə'shæmɪd/

ashamed adj.

1 be ashamed of sth. /doing sth. / having done sth.

2 She was deeply ashamed of her behaviour at the party. was/why/who...

3 I'm not ashamed of having a good job, and I intend to keep it. The China Syndrome (1979)

/ə'pɒlə.dʒaɪz/

apologize v.

1 apologize to sb. (for doing sth.)

2 I think you should apologize to your brother.

3 I don't know how to apologize to you. N2L50

4 apologize for (doing) something

5 I apologize for losing my temper. N2L78

/daɪ/

dye v.

1 dye something + adj.

2 She dyed her hair blonde.

3 I would dye my hair red, if you did that. N2L40

4 You needn't have dyed your hair red. You father will be so angry. N2L41

- prize money
- tie sb. to sth. = sb. be tied to sth.
- accuse sb. of doing sth.
- deny doing ... / sb. deny that + 句子
- be ashamed of sth. /doing sth. / having done sth.
- apologize to sb.
- apologize for (doing) something
- dye something + adj.

16 Story+Expressions

- tell sb. about sth.
- It's true that+句子, but+句子
- be astonished to find (that) + 句子

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

tell sb. about sth.

- I'm not gonna tell you about it.
- It's obvious that he's not gonna tell you about it. N2L51
- Unfortunately, they forgot to tell me about it until we arrived there.

It's true that+句子, but+句子

- It's true that my father was very strict with me, but he also love me. N2L51
- It's true that he could keep a secret, but I don't trust him. L4
- It's true that they made a study of him, but still they know very little about him. L9

be astonished to find (that) + 句子

- We were astonished to find the temple still in its original condition. N2L66
- They were astonished to find that the driver was a six-year-old boy.
- I was astonished to find that these monks led a meaningful life. L9

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/sə'spen.ʃən/ /sə'spend/

suspension n. suspend v.

- 1 The local authorities decided to build a suspension bridge over the river. N2L22
- 2 All these suspension bridges have one thing in common. L9
- 3 A large light was suspended from the ceiling. N2L10

/ə'gri:.ə.bəl/ /sɪtʃu'eɪ.ʃən/

agreeable adj. situation n.

- 1 agreeable/pleasant + situation/man/day
- 2 We spent a most agreeable day together.
- 3 You should have met her, for she is very agreeable. N2L65
- 4 He is so much more handsome and agreeable than anyone I have ever met before. Persuasion (2007) N2L8
- 5 The house is in a charming situation. location
- 6 The house's situation in the river valley is perfect. — Cambridge Dictionary

//ləʊ'keɪt/ //ləʊ'keɪ.ʃən/

locate v. location n.

- 1 be located in/near ...
- 2 The hotel is in a beautiful location by the lake.
- 3 Our office is located in the city centre.
- 4 The new building will be located in the center of town. N2L21
- 5 He told me about it yesterday and the hotel is located near the airport. L16

/ɪ'mɔ:..təl/

immortal adj.

- famous and likely to be remembered forever
- 1 Plato believed that the soul is immortal.
 - 2 [Story]: His name will probably remain immortal. will/what/why...
 - 3 It is disturbing to think that his name will remain immortal. L1

/ˈbrʊklɪn/

Brooklyn n.

/ˈstætn/

Staten n.

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/spæn/

span n.

1. a period of time between two dates or events
 2. the length of something from one end to the other
- 1 Over a span of ten years, the company has made great progress. N2L88
 - 2 Leo discovered that the bridge has a span of 100 metres. N2L81
 - 3 He points out that an animal's life span is linked to its metabolic rate. N2L58

/'keɪ.bəl/

cable n. 钢缆; 电缆

- 1 Be careful you don't cut the electric cable.
- 2 Telephone cables were damaged in the storm. N2L10
- 3 They tied him to a chair with cable. L16
- 4 [Story]: Two great towers support four huge cables. do/what...

/'kɒŋ.kri:t/

concrete n.

- 1 He fell and hit his head on the concrete floor.
- 2 Concrete is a mixture of sand and cement. L11
- 3 This suspension bridge is made of steel and concrete. N2L80

/'leŋθ/

length n.

- 1 a length of / lengths of +rope/pipe/wire
- 2 There is a length of rope here. Tie them to the chair. L16
- 3 Are you accusing me of stealing a length of wire? L16
- 4 He denied taking all 500 lengths of wire. L16

/ˈes.tɪ.meɪt/

estimate v.

- 1 It is estimated that + 句子
- 2 sb. estimate that + 句子
- 3 Police estimate that over 10,000 people took part in the demonstration. N2L12
- 4 I estimated that I should finish in ten days.
- 5 It is estimated that four million viewers watched the programme.

/kəˈpæsəti/

capacity n.

- 1 The fuel tank has a capacity of 40 litres.
- 2 Two water tanks provide a total capacity of 400 litres. do/what...
- 3 The stadium has a seating capacity of 50,000.

/ɪˈmen.sə.ti/

immensity n.

- the extremely large size of something:
- 1 I didn't realize the immensity of the universe until I entered school.
 - 2 I only realized the immensity of the task when my boss gave it to me.

/ˈeɪ.l.ə.ɡənt/

elegant adj.

- beautiful, attractive, or graceful
- 1 elegant + woman/dress/restaurant/hotel ...
 - 2 How can I have the privilege of meeting that elegant woman tonight? L4
 - 3 Not only did he buy his wife a very elegant dress, L5
 - 4 It's true that he bought his wife an elegant dress last night, but + 句子. L16

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈfeɪnt.li/

faintly adv.

- 1 slightly or not strongly: 微弱地; 淡淡; 隐约地;
- 2 The sun shone faintly through the clouds.
- 3 John smiled faintly and shook his head.

- agreeable/pleasant + situation/man/day
- be located in/near
- a span of
- life span
- a length of / lengths of +rope/pipe/wire
- It is estimated that + 句子
- sb. estimate that + 句子

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

17 Story+Expressions

- Little / not much/ not everything is known about a.
- describe a. as b.
- in the midst of
- by no means
- be considered to be adj./n.
- sth. be named after sb.
- join a. to b. = connect a. to b. L8
- be taken into account = take sth. into account
- a height of
- be suspended from a.
- be packed with...
- a third of sth... 三分之一
- fulfill sb's dream...

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

Little is known about a.

- Little is known about the author's childhood.
- Little is known about the causes of the problem.
- Not much is known about the disease.

describe a. as b.

- She describes herself as an artist.
- She described her childhood as a time of wonder and discovery.
- Would you describe him as a good father? *The Look of Love* (2013)

in the midst of

- We were sitting in the midst of elegant young women.
- We were standing in the midst of thousands of people.
- Leo was astonished to find the hut was in the midst of the forest. L16

by no means

Not in any way; not at all; absolutely not. certainly not. 决不;丝毫不;一点儿也不

- It's by no means certain that she'll get the job.
- She's not a bad kid, by any means.
- It's difficult, but by no means impossible.

be considered to be adj./n. 被认为; 被认为是

- James T. Kirk was considered to be a great man. *Star Trek* (2009)
- You know, *Caligari* is considered to be the first horror movie. *Maniac* (2012) L10
- She is considered to be one of the finest pianists of her generation.

be named after sb.

- The street is named after the famous South African leader, Nelson Mandela.
- My father advised me to name my child after this great river. L15
- It was true that his son was named after that great river. L16

join a. to b. = a. be joined to b. (by c.)

connect a. to b. L8

- This bridge joined the island to the mainland.
- The island is joined to the mainland by a bridge.

be taken into account = take sth. into account

consider something along with other factors before reaching a decision. 把...考虑在内

- I hope my teacher will take into account the fact that I was sick just before the exams when she marks my paper. N2L46
- A variety of other factors will be taken into account. N2L90
- He apologized to Leo, for he didn't take one important thing into account. L16

a height of

- The aircraft was flying at a height of 10,000 metres.
- It is said that one of the climbers fell from a height of 25 metres. N2L58
- The balloon reached a height of 20,000 feet. did/what/how...

be suspended from a. 悬挂/被停职

If someone is suspended from work, school, etc., they are temporarily not allowed to work, go to school, or take part in an activity because of having done something wrong:

- A large light was suspended from the ceiling. was/what/where...
- She was suspended from school for fighting.
- If you weren't Mr. Fire, you would be suspended from duty already.

The Black Dahlia (2006) N2L40

be packed with...

- The road was packed with volunteers.
- The island was packed with tourists.
- It's true that the place was packed with football fans, but+句子. L16

a third of sth... 三分之一

- A third of accidental deaths occur in the home.
- Over a third of sales were made over the Internet.
- I'll keep a third of the money and the rest is for you.

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

fulfill sb's dream...

- I realized I had fulfilled my dream. N2L20
- This is your chance to fulfill your dream of being a teacher. The Reading Room (2005)
- There was a time when everyone in this country can fulfill their dreams. L14

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈkʌrənt/

current n.

1 electric current

/ˈskʌlp.tʃə/

sculpture n.

- 1 make a sculpture / create a sculpture...
- 2 First of all, what kind of sculpture is this?
Ghost World (2001)
- 3 Leo was astonished to find that they wanted to see a new sculpture. L16
- 4 At that time, I thought you might be interested in sculpture. N2L19

/mɪˈsteɪ.kən/

mistaken adj.

- 1 Leo was afraid to say anything, fearing he might be mistaken. N2L49&L19
- 2 Many people have the mistaken idea that cats have nine lives. N2L46
- 3 I thought I saw someone I knew, but I must have been mistaken. N2L17
- 4 I was mistaken about the girl, for she's not as clever as I thought.

/ˈgæləri/

gallery n.

- a large building where people can see famous pieces of art
- 2 The children visited the gallery on a school trip. did/who/where/when/why/how...
 - 3 When they entered the gallery, they were greeted by a very strong perfume. L11
 - 4 This gallery was named after a very famous artist. Guess who? L17

/ɪgˈzɪbɪt/

/ɛksɪˈbɪʃən/

exhibit n. v. exhibition n.

- 1 It was the first time that the paintings had been exhibited in a gallery.
- 2 Her paintings have been exhibited all over the world.
- 3 The exhibits date from the 17th century. L3
- 4 He saw all the exhibits in the art gallery and fulfilled his dream. L17

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/ˈɒd.li/

oddly adv. strangely

- 1 Didn't you think she was behaving very oddly at the party yesterday?
- 2 Oddly enough, she didn't mention anything about the fact that she was getting married. N2L46 说也奇怪
- 3 She's been behaving oddly this week. N2L52

/əˈtætʃ/

attach v.

- 1 be attached to sb./sth. = attach a. to b.
- 2 This note was attached to it when I found it in police files. In the Name of the Father (1993)
- 3 The phone was attached to a wall.
was/what/where/why...
- 4 Even if the chain was attached to you, ...
- 5 The anchor was attached to a length of rope. L17

/sˈfɪə/

sphere n.

- 1 On the following day, Leo bought 37 metal spheres. N2L83
- 2 It is now known that the Earth is not a perfect sphere. N2L82
- 3 All these spheres are made of metal. N2L80

/ˈmæɡ.nə.taɪz/

magnetize v.

- 1 [Story]: The spheres had been magnetized.
- 2 The spheres must/can't have been magnetized. N2L17
- 3 The spheres may have been magnetized. N2L19
- 4 The spheres will be magnetized. N2L21

/rɪˈpeɪl/

repel v. 排斥; 使厌恶反感; 击退

- 1 Your rudeness repels everyone. / The smell repelled him.
- 2 No. No, I think I repel the women that I want the most. P.S. I Love You (2007)
- 3 But on the other hand, most people will probably be repelled by my crime. Ted K (2021) L11

/ˈflɪkə/

flicker v.

to shine with a light that is sometimes bright and sometimes weak: 闪烁

- 1 The candle/lights flickered a few times and then went out. did/what...
- 2 Looking through the window, I saw the lights flickering. N2L49&L35
- 3 Her face lit up when she saw all the candles flickering in the room. L11

/ɪˈmɪt/

emit v.

散发(光、热、声音、气等); to send out something such as light, heat, sound, gas, etc.

- 1 [Story]: Sparks were emitted from small black boxes. were/what/why/where...
- 2 She emitted one loud cry and then was silent.
- 3 The cheese was emitting a strong smell.
- 4 The factory has been emitting black smoke from its chimney for a whole month. N2L52

/flæʃ/

flash v.

- 1 Red warning lights flashed on and off (=shone for a short time and then stopped shining).
- 2 flash something into/at/towards somebody/something
- 3 Why is that guy flashing his headlights at me?
- 4 You'd better slow down, that car was flashing at you.

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/priːhɪˈstɒrɪk/

prehistoric adj. very old-fashioned

- 1 My mom has these prehistoric ideas about dress.
- 2 He has prehistoric views about women who have careers.
- 3 Those sinks are perfectly good. They're prehistoric! Angie (1994)

/ɪlektˈrɒnɪk/

electronic adj.

- 1 electronic equipment + v. buy/sell ...
- 2 On the other hand, he make large sums of money by selling electronic equipment. L11&L14
- 3 He loaded the truck with electronic equipments. L12
- 4 Please, turn off your electronic devices.

/pɪˈkjuː.liə/

peculiar adj.

strange, unfamiliar, or a little surprising

- 1 There was a peculiar smell in the kitchen.
- 2 This cheese has a peculiar smell.
- 3 The wine has a peculiar taste.
- 4 For some peculiar reason, she refused to come inside. N2L21&L9

/ʃɒk/

shock v. n.

- 1 an electric shock
- 2 An electric shock can kill you. can/what/why/how...
- 3 You'll get an electric shock if you touch that. N2L16
- 4 They'll give you electric shocks if you don't obey the rules. N2L16

/ɪ'məʊ.ʃənəli/

emotionally adv. emotional adj. emotion n.

1 involve / abuse

2 [Story]: This was designed to shock people emotionally. was/what/why/who...

3 She spoke emotionally about her experiences as a teacher.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- make a sculpture / create a sculpture
- be mistaken about sth./sb.
- Oddly enough, ...句子
- be attached to sb./sth. = attach a. to b.
- get an electric shock
- receive an electric shock
- give you electric shocks

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

18 Story+Expressions

- not any more = not any longer = no longer
- The idea that+句子 is mistaken.
- take no interest in
- in response to
- be familiar to sb.
- go mad
- on and off
- It was rather like ...
- seemed designed ...
- be designed to do sth.

not any more

= not any longer

= no longer 中级红皮书U111

- Lucy doesn't work here any more/ any longer.
- Lucy no longer works here. (no more 不行)
- We are no longer friends.

The idea (that+句子) is mistaken.

- The idea that products made in China are bad in quality is mistaken.
- The idea that one couple should have only one child is mistaken.
- The idea that one can make large sums of money without working hard is mistaken. L14

take no/a great/an interest in

- Now that you take no interest in my work, please just go away. L8
- Babies soon begin to take an interest in the world around them.
- Jacky first took an interest in golf when he was about six years old.

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

in response to

your reply or reaction to it 作为回应

- In response to local demand, we will be opening this store from nine till seven on Sundays. N2L13
- The product was developed in response to demand.
- I'd like to say a few words in response to the recent news.

be/sound/look/seem familiar to sb.

- The name of the restaurant was not familiar to me. → I didn't know the name of the restaurant.
- The smell is very familiar to anyone who lives near a bakery. N2L28

go mad become very angry; crazy

- I'd go mad if I stayed at home all day. N2L40
- I'll go mad if I have to wait much longer. N2L16
- Oddly enough, he's gone mad already. L18

on and off

- He's been smoking for ten years now, on and off. N2L52
- After studying Education at Chicago University, he worked on and off as a teacher. N2L49
- My husband has suffered from this on and off for years. N2L78

It was rather like n.

- It's rather like a candy store, isn't it?

For Love or Money (1993)

- It was rather like having two sons.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

seemed designed ...

- linking verb 系动词 + adj.
- You seem angry about something.
- No? No, I mean, these walls, they seem designed to keep people in...

The Belko Experiment (2016)

be designed to do sth.

- This experiment is designed to test the new drug.
- My courses are designed to teach you how to learn English by yourself.
- It was by no means designed to emit sparks, right? L17

homework

- 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
- 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 重复间隔(置顶留言)

/ d i ə /

dear adj.

expensive; loved or liked very much: 宝贵的; 昂贵; 珍视的

- 1 The food was good but very dear.
- 2 Oddly enough, Mark became a dear friend. L18
- 3 be dear to somebody
- 4 His sister was very dear to him.
- 5 They lost everything (that was dear to them). N2L28

/ ˈ k i d . n æ p ə /

kidnapper n.

- 1 In response to the kidnapper's requests, our answer is "NO". L18
- 2 The kidnapper gave him electric shocks last night. L18 did/who/when...
- 3 The kidnapper never took that into account. L17

/ k ə n ˈ s i d ə r ə b ə l /

considerable adj.

large or of noticeable importance:

- 1 a considerable amount/number of sth.
- 2 We've saved a considerable amount of money. how much/how/why/who...
- 3 A considerable amount of research was done here by their team.
- 4 The project wasted a considerable amount of time and money.

/ ˈ w e l . θ i /

wealthy adj.

- 1 wealthy + family/man/businessman
- 2 Joan comes from a wealthy family.
- 3 They are said to be very wealthy. N2L58
- 4 He is regarded as the wealthiest man in the town. L10

/ ˈ ɔ : . d ə l i /

orderly adj.

If something is done in an orderly fashion or manner, it is done in a well-organized and controlled way.
有条不紊地; 有序的

- 1 lead a adj. life of 过着...的生活 L9
- 2 [Story]: Rastus leads an orderly life. does/what kind of/who/what...
- 3 Please leave in an orderly fashion.
- 4 Huh? All right, class, let's leave this building in an orderly manner. Class of Nuke 'Em High (1986)

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/ d i s ə ˈ p i ə . r ə n s /

disappearance n. disappear v.

- 1 At first nobody noticed the child's disappearance. L19
- 2 How can you explain the girl's disappearance to her mother? N2L33
- 3 The old lady was unaware of her cat's disappearance. N2L70

/ ə ˈ n ə n ə m ə s /

anonymous adj.

- 1 anonymous + letter/(phone) call
- 2 You can remain anonymous if you want to.
- 3 The money was given by a local businessman who wants to remain anonymous.
- 4 Keaton made an anonymous phone call. The Usual Suspects (1995)

/ ˈ r æ n . s ə m /

ransom n.

money that is paid to somebody so that they will set free a person who is being kept as a prisoner by them.

- 1 The kidnappers are demanding a ransom of \$1 million.
- 2 The old lady refused to pay the ransom. N2L9
- 3 They agreed to pay the ransom. N2L65
- 4 They should have paid the ransom. N2L65

/ ˈ k æ : d . b ɔ : d /

cardboard n.

a cardboard box

- 1 Why is there a cat in that cardboard box?
- 2 After he had taken all the cardboard boxes to the basement, he took a shower. L4
- 3 Let's keep the status quo. Don't move these cardboard boxes. L4

/wɪð'drɔ:/ /wɪð'dru:/ /wɪð'drɔ:n/

withdraw withdrew withdrawn v.

- 1 to take money out of a bank account
- 2 I withdrew \$200 from my savings account. did/who/why/how much...
- 3 You can withdraw cash from ATMs in any town or city.
- 4 People will go to extremes to withdraw their money. L5

/'pʌŋk.tʃuə.li/

punctually adv.

- punctual adj. on time N2L87
- 1 [Story]: Rastus arrived punctually at seven o'clock that evening. did/who/when/why...
- 2 Not only do they always pay punctually, but... L5
- 3 The old lady got impatient, for he didn't arrive punctually. L5

/ə'staʊnd/ /ə'staʊndɪd/

astound v. astounded adj.

- to make someone very surprised or shocked SYN: astonish L16
- 1 It astounded sb. that +句子
- 2 It astounded me that she succeeded.
- 3 The doctors were astounded (that) he survived.
- 4 His movie never failed to astound me.
- 5 We were astounded to read your letter.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- be dear to somebody
- a considerable amount/number of sth.
- in an orderly fashion/manner
- anonymous + letter/ (phone) call
- remain anonymous
- a ransom of +钱
- It astounded sb. that +句子

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

19 Story+Expressions

- share sth. with sb.
- take a short/long walk
- get worried...
- in safe hands...
- at first...
- go to the police
- make sth. clear...
- change sb's mind
- follow sb's instructions...
- keep sb's word
- sure enough
- sb. explained that + 句子
- Considering+ n., 句子
- in more ways than one

share sth. with sb.

- He shared the pie with her. did/who/ why...
- Would you like to share your feelings with the group?
- Would you mind sharing a room with Jenny? N2L68

take a short walk

- Why don't you take a short walk and think about it? My Stepmother Is an Alien (1988)
- I don't want to talk a short walk with him any more. L18
- Leo denied taking a short walk in the early morning. L16

get worried...

- After twenty minutes I started to get worried. did/who/when/why...
- Her bus is nearly two hours late, and I'm starting to get worried.
- When you told me that you got large sums of money, I got worried. L14

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

in safe hands...

- I believed he was in safe hands.
- Leo was confident that his company was in safe hands. N2L55
- I am sure that your money is in safe hands. N2L78

at first

- At first I thought he was shy, but then I discovered he was just not interested in other people. N2L81&L20
- At first, they didn't take that seriously. L1
- At first, these temples were used as a place of worship. L3

go to the police

- I received an anonymous phone call, and told me not to go to the police about what I'd seen.
- She ought to have gone to the police. N2L65
- Oddly enough, she didn't go the police. L18

make sth. clear. (that+句子)

- Let me make one thing perfectly clear — if I ever catch you treating my son poorly, I will make you regret the day you were born.
- Let me make it clear that this house is designed to help poor people. L18

change sb's mind

- If you change your mind about the job, just give me a call.
- At first the doctor said I was suffering from a virus, but now he's changed his mind. N2L78
- What caused you to change your mind? N2L88

follow sb's instructions

- You should have followed the instructions. N2L65
- We were made to follow your father's instructions. L11
- Leo realized to his horror that she didn't follow the instructions. L10

keep sb's word

- I said I'd visit him and I shall keep my word.
- I think it important for one to keep his word.
- If he did not keep his word, he would lose his head. *The Man in the Iron Mask* (1977) N2L40

sure enough

- Sure enough, Mike managed to get lost. N2L67
- He said he would come, and sure enough he came.
- Sure enough, this was exempted from import duty. L11

习惯用法 造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

sb. explained that + 句子

- She explained that she had been ill.
- Alex explained that his car had broken down. N2L56
- He explained that he had to leave at once. N2L19

Considering+ n., 句子

- Considering the weather, we got here pretty quickly.
- I was impressed that she found the way here, considering she'd only been here once before.
- He exhibited great self-control considering her rudeness.

in more ways than one

- You say in more ways than one to indicate that what you have said is intended to have more than one meaning. 在很多方面; 不止一方面
- They're alike in more ways than one.
 - He is mistaken about that in more ways than one. L18

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

单 词 造 句 指 南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性	习 惯 用 法 造 句 指 南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变		四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456		方式/地点/时间	6123456
	结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法		其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/ˈpiəːniə/

pioneer n.

someone who is important in the early development of something, and whose work or ideas are later developed by other people

1 The pioneers walked across the desert. did/ who/where...

2 John Whitney was a pioneer of computer animation.

3 Byrd was a pioneer who flew over the North Pole for the first time in 1929. N2L43

/lɔːd/

lord n.

1 (英国)贵族; 勋爵

2 Lord Northcliffe

3 Yes, my lord.

/'kælɪ/

Calais n.

1 加来[法]

/'əʊ.və.lænd/

overland adj. adv.

by land, not by sea or by air

1 They plan to travel overland to China. N2L38

2 We decided not to travel overland to Beijing.

3 overland is not one of the top 60,000 words of English. — coca

- offer sth. to sb. = offer sb. sth. N2L78
- a prize of +money
- make an attempt to do sth.
- attempt to do sth. L8
- be forced to do sth.
- be picked up by a. ...
- on the same day
- It looked as if/though

offer sth. to sb. = offer sb. sth. N2L78

■ He lit a cigarette and offered one to Lucy.

■ This school offers places to students (who can show talent).

■ They are likely to offer the best job to someone from within the company. L9

a prize of +money

■ The participants will have an opportunity to receive a prize of £500. L12

■ The winner will receive a prize of \$50,000 and a new truck.

■ Leo wished that he had won a prize of \$5000. L12

make an attempt

attempt to do sth. L8

■ It was Lucy who made several attempts to escape. N2L58

■ The climbers will make another attempt to reach the top of the mountain today.

■ Bob felt guilty that he had not made an attempt to save her. L11

be forced to do sth. = force sb. to do sth.

■ They forced Leo to hand the money to them. N2L32

■ They were forced to hand over their passports. = The kidnappers forced them to hand over their passports.

■ They had little money and they were forced to sell the farm.

be picked up by a...

- The sailors were picked up by a passing boat.
- The survivors were picked up by fishing boats from nearby villages.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

on the same day

- On the same day, he made a considerable amount of money. L19
- On the same day, Leo advised me to move to Beijing. L15
- On the same day, Leo made the remarkable discovery that+句子 L4

It looked as if/though...

- It looks as if/though it's going to rain.
- It sounds as if/though Jack's going to change his mind. L19
- When I told them my plan, they looked at me as if/though I was mad.
- 虚拟语气:
He talks as if he knew everything.
He talks as if he was/were rich.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 复习新概念第二册【语法】查阅教学视频视频，查中级红皮书
4. 文章跟读至熟读成诵，内化单词+语法+习惯用法（听力+口语+写作练习）
5. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
6. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/ˈbɒk.sɪŋ/

boxing n.

- 1 The boxing match will be held tonight. will/where/why/when... N2L21
- 2 Leo is astonished to find that he is the boxing champion of the world. L16
- 3 Many doctors believe that boxing is too dangerous and should be banned. N2L21

/ˈbɒk.sə/

boxer n.

- 1 Leo had an opportunity to fight with a real boxer last night. L12
- 2 On the other hand, the boxer felt guilty about that. L11
- 3 He was regarded as the best boxer at that time. L10

/ˈbeə/

bare adj. not covered by clothes

- 1 bare + feet/hands/arms ...
- 2 Don't walk on the cold floor with bare feet.
- 3 I might be able to open that door with my bare hands. N2L19&L43
- 4 Because if you'd given me a chance, I would have opened that tomb with my bare hands. Of Love and Shadows (1994) N2L64

/ˈpraɪz.fɑɪ.tə/

prizefighter n.

- 1 prize + fighter:
a boxer who fights to win money

/kruːd/

crude adj. rude and offensive

- 1 It is said that Leo was very crude.
- 2 Leo is said to be very crude. N2L58
- 3 His crude language might have upset some of the guests. N2L19

/ˈmɑː.kwɪs/

marquis n. 侯爵

- 1 公爵, 侯爵, 伯爵, 子爵, 男爵
- 2 Duke, Marquis, Earl, Viscount, Baron

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈtek.nɪ.kəli/

technically adv.

according to the exact meaning, facts
技术上; 学术上; 专业上; 严格说来

- 1 Technically, the two countries are still at war. L14
- 2 Okay? Technically you do work for me. The Wolf of Wall Street (2013)
- 3 Technically speaking, ...+ 句子
- 4 Well, technically speaking, Suzanne, those tapes actually belong to us. To Die For (1995)

/ˈsaɪ.əns/

science n.

- 1 teach/study +science + class/education/teacher
- 2 He studied sciences at California Institute of Technology.
- 3 British scientists have brought computer science to solve this problem. N2L53
- 4 It is disturbing to think that they don't teach science at this school any more. L1 L18

/ˈpɒpjʊ.lærəti/

popularity n.

- 1 The band enjoyed great popularity in the 1980s.
- 2 gain/grow/increase in popularity
- 3 Extreme sports are growing in popularity.
- 4 Country music is growing in popularity.

/əˈdɔː/

adore v.

- 1 to love someone very much and feel very proud of them
- 2 It's obvious that she adores him.
- 3 Don't you just adore that dress!
- 4 As long as I adore him, I don't think he cares. Profile (2018) L7

/ə'laɪk/

alike adv. in a similar way adj. very similar not before noun

- 1 great minds think alike
- 2 My mother and I are alike in many ways.
- 3 They can't explain why the twins don't look alike.
- 4 Everyone, rich and poor alike, took no interest in this thing. L18

/feɪm/

fame n.

- 1 rise to fame (=become famous)
- 2 She rose to fame as a singer at the age of 16. did/who/how/when...
- 3 He rose to fame when he was still a young boy, and was considered to be the best detective in the city. L17

/ˈemɪ.nənt/

eminent adj.

- 1 famous, respected, or important, admired, respected
- 2 an eminent lawyer/artist/painter/poet/writer...
- 3 Little/not much/ not everything is known about a. L17
- 4 On one's way to sw. L15 5 out of business L14

/ˈbɪtə.li/

bitterly adv.

(describing unpleasant or sad feelings) extremely

- 1 quarrel/complain/ be disappointed...
- 2 He complained bitterly about his boss last night. did/who/why/how...
- 3 They'll both be bitterly disappointed with that.
- 4 Leo discovered that they quarreled bitterly last night. N2L81

/bet/

bet - bet betted v.

- 1 bet (¥) on sth.
- 2 She bet all her money on that horse. did/who/why/what...
- 3 I bet + 句子: used to say that you are fairly sure that something is true, something is happening etc, although you cannot prove this

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/ə'kæd.ə.mi/

academy n.

- 1 teach/study/found/visit+academy
- 2 Leo and Berlin founded the Capsule Academy in 2021.
- 3 I visited Chinese Academy of Sciences yesterday. did/who/when/where/why...
- 4 Leo teaches English at that academy.

/ɪk'stræv.ə.gənt/

extravagant adj.

- 1 spending or costing a lot of money, especially more than is necessary or more than you can afford; 奢侈的; 挥霍的; 铺张 浪费的
- 2 It is you who lead an extravagant life, not me. N2L58 L9
- 3 Don't be so extravagant, spend your money more carefully.

/ˈpɒv.ə.ti/

poverty n.

- 1 Millions of elderly people live in poverty.
- 2 Old people should not have to live in poverty. N2L65
- 3 She has lived in poverty all her life.
- 4 He led a disordered life and died in poverty. L9

- with sb's bare hands
- Technically speaking, ...+ 句子
- gain/grow/increase in popularity
- great minds think alike
- rise to fame (=become famous)
- quarrel/complain/ be disappointed...+bitterly
- bet (¥) on sth.
- I bet + 句子
- live in poverty

21 Story+Expressions

- Because of + 单词/短语
- be born in + 年份
- draw up
- a set of ...
- change ... into ... N2L66 turn ... into ...
- bring ... to ...
- In sb's day
- be quick to do sth.
- in fact ...
- turn against sb.
- It is clear that + 句子
- settle the argument
- It was not until ... that + 句子
- as much as ... half as much as L4
- be in debt

Because of + 单词/短语

- He had to retire because of the disease. did/who/why...
- We spent three hours waiting in the rain because of you! N2L59
- We didn't take a short walk because of the bad weather. L19

be born in + 年份/地点

- Oddly enough, he was born in a small village in northern Spain.
- As Lucy put it, "She was born in New York and has an American passport". L12
- They were amazed to find that she was born in 1989. L3

draw up

to prepare and write something such as a document or plan: 拟定, 起草

- They agreed to draw up a formal agreement. N2L65
- It comes as a surprise to learn that Leo's gonna draw up the plans. N2L90 课堂笔记
- Leo must have drawn up the plans last night. N2L17

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

a set of

A set of things is a number of things that belong together or that are thought of as a group. 一套; 一副;

- I was wondering if you could get me a set of keys. The Whistleblower (2010) N2L68
- He was convinced that Leo'd given him a different set of rules. L1
- I'm glad that they drew up a new set of rules. L2

change ... into ... N2L66

turn ... into ...

- Leo has changed his yard into a garden.
- A witch had changed him into a mouse. had/who/how/why/when...

bring sb./sth. to sb./sth.

- Is it OK if I bring some friends to the party?
- He expects me to bring everything to him. L22
- They made an attempt to bring peace to this place. L20

In sb's day

- when somebody was most successful, famous, etc:
- He had, in his day, been one of the greatest singers in the world.
- The man had been a famous marathon runner in his day.

be quick to do sth.

- The teacher explained that the kids were quick to learn. L19
- You needn't be so quick to agree. Mountains of the Moon (1990) N2L41
- You'll find they're very quick to learn. Robot Jox (1989)

in fact ...

- I know Lucy really well. In fact, I had dinner with her last week.
- They told me it would be cheap but in fact it cost me nearly \$500.
- In fact, he offered me a job. N2L78

turn against sb.

to stop supporting or being friendly to (someone or something) 与.....反目成仇; 反对某人

- Why did you turn against me?
- It was not long before every one of his friends turned against him. N2L75

It is clear that + 句子(很明显;显而易见)

- It was clear that they had made a profit. N2L80
- So it was clear that I was gonna have to look after myself. Avengement (2019)
- It is clear that they will go to the police. L19

settle the argument 解决争端

- Why don't you ask the teacher to help you to settle the argument? N2L52
- If it hadn't been for him, we wouldn't have settled the argument. N2L64
- Oddly enough, they managed to settle the argument last night. L18 N2L67

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

It was not until...that + 句子

- It was not until 1972 that the war finally came to an end.
- It was not until last year that I made the first attempt to do that. L20
- It was not until last night that she finally went to the police. L19

as much as ...half as much as L4

You use as much as before an amount to suggest that it is surprisingly large. (竟然)多达

- Eat as much as you wish.
- The final cost could be as much as one billion dollars.
- They hoped to earn as much as 1 million dollars per year. N2L36

be in debt

- No one can explain why he is always in debt.
- He was so heavily in debt that he had to sell his house and car. N2L35
- He was forced to work after he had retired, for he was in debt. L20

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap

/rʌn/ /ræn/

run ran run v.

- 1 to continue being performed regularly in one place; 连续上映
- 2 Oddly enough, the play ran for two years. L18
- 3 These plays have run for two years.
- 4 Leo explained that these plays had run for two years. L19

/laɪnz/

lines n.

- 1 [Story] repeat the same lines...
- 2 The actors were forced to repeat the same lines over and over again. L20 N2L73
- 3 The actor changed his mind and refused to repeat the same lines. L19
- 4 It astounded me that he repeat the same lines for 2 hours. L19

/pɑ:t/ /rɔ:l/

part n. role n.

- 1 one of the characters in a film, play, or dance, or the words, actions, or movements that are said or done by that character: 角色; 台词 etc.
- 2 He has a small part in the school play.
- 3 [Story]: know their parts...
- 4 It's true that he is a very famous actor, but he doesn't know his parts in the play at all. L16

/pɑ:t/ /rɔ:l/

part n. role n.

- 1 play the role of ... 扮演。。。角色
- 2 Matthews plays the role of a young doctor.
- 3 I bet she was the first actress to play the role of Peter Pan. L21
- 4 When you play this game, you will play the role of the captain.

/'fɒl.tə/

falter v.

- 1 to speak in a voice that sounds weak and uncertain, and keeps stopping; 结巴地说; 支吾其词
- 2 Leo's voice faltered as he tried to thank him.
- 3 He attempted to thank him, but his voice began to falter. L8
- 4 He went to the police, but his voice faltered when he tired to tell them what had happened. L19

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/kɑ:st/

cast cast cast v.

to select (an actor) to play a part in a play or film 分配角色, 委派角色, 选角色

- 1 sb. be cast in the role of=cast sb. in the role of
- 2 To cast an actor in a play or movie means to choose them to act a particular role in it. 出演...角色, 扮演角色
- 3 He found himself cast in the role of guide and translator.
- 4 It is said that he cast a young woman in the role of the captain. N2L58

/'æristəkræt/ /ə'ristə.kræt/

aristocrat n. aristocrat

- 1 It looked as if the aristocrat would be offering a prize of 1000 to him. L20
- 2 The idea that aristocrat should live a better life is mistaken. L18
- 3 Little is known about that aristocrat. L17

/'ɪm'prɪzən/

imprison v.

- 1 to put someone in prison or to keep them somewhere and prevent them from leaving; 监禁; 关押
- 2 They managed to imprison a few aristocrats. N2L67
- 3 He fled to Paris because they were trying to imprison him. Desert Dancer (2014)
- 4 If you do not allow this, they will imprison him.

/'bæ'sti:l/

Bastille n.

巴士底狱

/'dʒeɪ.lə/

gaoler n. old-fashioned for jailer

- 1 Imagine the jailer's dismay when he found no one in the cell. L7
- 2 The jailer leads an orderly life. L9
- 3 The jailer was greeted by an awful smell when he entered the cell. L11

/ˈkɒliːg/

colleague n.

1 someone who you work with in a company or organization, for example someone working in the same office, or someone teaching in the same school ; 同事

2 Now that we have an opportunity to meet every colleagues in the company, ... L8 L12

3 There was a time when you didn't have to be friends with your colleagues. L14

/ˈkɜːtən/

curtain n.

1 a sheet of heavy material that comes down at the front of the stage in a theatre; (舞台上的)幕, 幕布

2 Before the curtain went up(rise), the dancers took their places on stage.

3 the curtain goes up/rises/comes down/falls...

/rɪˈviːl/

reveal v.

1 to show something that was previously hidden; 显示; 显出; 露出

2 The curtain went up and revealed the aristocrat. did/what/who...

3 It astounded Leo that the door opened to reveal a nice little room. L19

/sɛl/

cell n.

1 a small room in a prison or police station where prisoners are kept; 牢房

2 He spent a night in one small cell at the local police station. did/who/where/why...

3 It looked as if he would spend the rest of his life in a prison cell. L20

/blæŋk/

blank adj.

1 a blank sheet of paper...

2 If you give me a blank tape, I'll record it for you.

3 At the end of the two-hour exam, he handed in a blank sheet of paper.

4 Just as the film was starting, the screen went blank.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/skwɪnt/

squint v.

1 to look at something with your eyes partly shut in order to keep out bright light or to see better; 眯着眼睛看; 瞄

2 Stop squinting at the screen – put your glasses on.

3 She squinted at the sign but couldn't see what it said.

4 Squinting his eyes, Leo let out a cry. L13

/dɪm/

dim adj.

1 fairly dark or not giving much light, so that you cannot see well; OPP bright; 昏暗的

2 The light is too dim for me to read. N2L103

3 In the dim light, Leo told me about the story. L16

4 Everything looked grey in the dim light of the oil lamp.

/saɪə/

sire n.

(旧时对国王的称呼)陛下

/prəˈsiːd/

proceed v.

1 to continue to do something that has already been planned or started; 继续; 接着做

2 They will proceed to build another building. will/why/what/who...

3 As soon as he came in, he proceeded to tell us all his troubles.

4 Having said she wasn't hungry, she then proceeded to order a large pizza. N2L49

- play the role of
- sb. be cast in the role of = cast sb. in the role of
- the curtain goes up / rises / comes down falls
- a blank sheet of paper
- squinting at
- In the dim light
- proceed to do sth.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

22 Story+Expressions

- on end
- In many ways
- be required to do sth.
- expect sb. to do sth.
- be expected to do sth.
- learn/know sth. by heart...
- have cause to do sth.
- sb. insisted that + 句子(should do).
- be written out in full
- play a joke on sb.
- present sth. to sb.
- look on
- at last
- be anxious to do sth.
- stare at
- read sth. to sb.
- much to sb's sth.

(for weeks/months/years) on end

- Sometimes he would not leave his room for days on end.
- He used to roam the streets for hours on end. N2L31
- Leo was astonished to find they had talked with each other for hours on end. L16

In many ways

- It is clear that my mother and I are alike in many ways. L21
- Leo is different from Berlin in many ways. N2L56
- In many ways, you can fulfill your dreams in this city. L17

be required to do sth.

- if you are required to do or have something, a law or rule says you must do it or have it
- You are required by law to wear a seat belt.
- Students are required to bring a blank sheet of paper with them. L22

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

expect sb. to do sth

- I didn't expect him to stay so long.
- We didn't expect him to win a prize of \$1000. L20
- They didn't expect her to pay a ransom of \$1000. L19

sb. be expected to do sth.

- When you "are expected" to do something, it means that people think that you're supposed to do it. 被期望做某事、应该做某事
- Students are expected to be quiet in the classroom.
- He's a former champion and is expected to win the game.

learn/know sth. by heart...

- when you know something by heart, you remember all of it exactly
- After a few days, he still knew her number by heart.
- I made it very clear, and you knew that by heart, but you still change your mind. L19

have cause to do sth.

- to have a strong reason for doing, thinking, or feeling something; 有理由/原因做某事
- Joe's father had good cause to be proud of him. N2L12
- I've never had any cause to complain about my doctor. N2L24

sb. insisted that + 句子(should do).

- 虚拟语气 + N2L64 Suggest that should do
- 坚持要求insist that+句子 (should do) should 可省略
- They insisted that everyone should come to the party.
- He insisted I should take a taxi.
- She insisted that the seats (should) be booked in advance.

sb. insisted that+句子

- insist 坚持认为, 坚持说, to say firmly, 不用 should do
- She insisted that she heard somebody in the house.
- Mike insisted that he was right.

be written out in full = write sth. out in full

- Because of this, he always writes it out in full. L21
- It was clear that it wasn't written out in full. L21
- He made an attempt to write it out in full, but failed to do so. L20

play a joke on sb.

- A man named Wakefield decides to play a joke on his wife.
- Technically speaking, it was you who played a joke on him, not me. L21 N2L58
- Not only did he play a joke on Leo,... L5

present sth. to sb. N2L32

hand sth. to sb.

- to give something to someone formally or officially 把某物赠给某人
- Finally the mayor presented the medals to the winners.
- They presented their report to the president, who looked it over, and signed it. N2L77

习惯用法造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

look on

- to watch something happening, without being involved in it or trying to stop it 观看; 旁观
- Only one man tried to help us, the rest just looked on in silence.
- A lot of people just looked on while the robbery happened.

at last

- if something happens at last, it happens after you have been hoping, waiting, or working for it a long time 最后; 终于;
- At last, they turned against me. L21
- At last, they told me about that. L16
- At last, she let out a cry and ran out of the room. L13

be anxious to do sth.

= N2L57 be eager to do sth.

- He is anxious to finish the job. is/who/why...
- The police are anxious to hear from anyone who may know this thing. N2L28
- I am anxious to find out what's happened. L5

stare at

- to look at something or someone for a long time without moving your eyes 凝视; 瞪着看
- What are you staring at? Why are you staring at that?
- Susan realized to her horror that Leo was staring at himself in the mirror. L10

read sth. to sb.

- He glanced at the letter and began to read it to his daughter. N2L49
- He was genuinely sorry that he couldn't read the story to his daughter last night. L12
- To his horror, a stranger is reading a letter to his daughter. L10

习惯
用法
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

其他习惯用法

结合学过的语法

much to sb's sth.

(amusement/surprise/dismay)

- used to say that someone feels very surprised, embarrassed etc 令某人特别/很...
- Much to my relief, the conversation turned to another topic.
- Much to her surprise, there were two police cars parked down the street.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈpɔɪ.zən/

poison n.

1 One man's meat is another man's poison : What is good for one person may be bad for another; what is pleasant to one person may be unpleasant to another. 萝卜白菜，各有所爱。

/ɪˈlɒdʒɪ.kəl/

illogical adj.

1 It is illogical to do sth.
2 It is illogical to assume you can do the work of three people.
3 Because we do not know what death is, it is illogical to fear it.
4 It's illogical to bet all your money on this. L21

/ˈɒk.tə.pəs/

octopus n.

1 be found in L1
2 for one cause or another L2
3 have the privilege of doing sth. L4
4 On the other hand, no one there likes to eat octopus. L11
5 I'm genuinely sorry that you don't like octopus. L12

/ˈdelɪ.kə.sɪ/

delicacy n.

1 something especially rare or expensive that is good to eat. 精美的食物; 美味佳肴
2 Snails are considered a delicacy in France. are/what/why/where...
3 I bet octopus is a great delicacy in some countries. L21
4 Octopus is regarded as a great delicacy. L10

/rɪˈpʌl.sɪv/

repulsive adj.

1 extremely unpleasant, in a way that almost makes you feel sick; 令人厌恶的; 令人反感的
2 Oddly enough, Leo finds it very repulsive. L18 N2L4
3 He is so repulsive that no one is interested in him. N2L35
4 Leo describes snails as very repulsive food. L17

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈstʌmək/ /tɜ:n/

stomach n. turn v.

1 turn sb's stomach
2 Don't stare at that, for it would turn your stomach. L22
3 Much to Leo's surprise, it didn't turn his stomach at all. L22
4 sick to my stomach: 恶心反胃; feeling very disgusted or angry

/fraɪ/

fry v.

1 to cook something in hot fat or oil 油炸; 油煎
2 Remember to cut off the fat before you fry the steak.
3 It seems that they had fried chicken for dinner. L9
4 Leo learnt to fry chicken when he was in Auckland. L9

/fæt/

fat n.

1 I didn't like the meat, for there was too much fat on it.
2 Butter is made of animal fat. N2L80
3 Leo was curious to find out that + 句子 N2L79
4 If you want to lose weight, just try to avoid food high in animal fat. N2L16

/əˈbju:z/

abuse n.

1 rude and offensive words said to another person: 辱骂; 恶语
2 [Story]: No creature has received more abuse than snails.
3 No one has received more abuse than that guy in our company.
4 a received more abuse than b...

/sneɪl/ /ə'səʊ.si.ət/ /ə'səʊʃjət/

snail n. associate v.

- 1 Leo saw him eat a snail last week. N2L34
- 2 For the first time in Leo's life, he tired to eat a snail. N2L49
- 3 associate a with b
- 4 It seems that people associate the old days with good times. L9
- 5 Why do people associate snails with food?

/'lʌkʃəri/

luxury n.

- 1 very great comfort and pleasure, such as you get from expensive food, beautiful houses, cars 奢侈的享受 珍品
- 2 He was leading a life of luxury in Australia.
- 3 She got used to a life of great luxury. L2
- did/how/who/how/what...
- 4 She saw books as a necessity, not a luxury.

/dɪ'spaɪz/

despise v.

- 1 to dislike and have a low opinion of someone or something 鄙视; 看不起; 蔑视;
- 2 She despised her neighbor, and tried to put her neighbor's husband out of business. L14
- 3 Some people pretend to despise the things [they cannot have]. do/who/why/what...

/ə'pi:l/

appeal v.

- 1 appeal to sb.
- 2 if someone or something appeals to you, they seem attractive and interesting; to attract, please, or interest 对某人有吸引力
- 3 The idea of working abroad really appeals to me.
- 4 Leo is anxious to find out if the new book will appeal to young readers. L22

/'ʃaʊə/

shower n.

- 1 a short period of rain or snow 阵雨(雪)
- 2 [Story]: after a heavy shower...
- 3 After a heavy shower, he followed his father's instructions and fixed the front door. L19
- 4 be in the shower 淋浴 take a shower
- 5 Why does the phone always ring when I'm in the shower?

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/strɔ:l/

stroll n.

- 1 to walk somewhere in a slow relaxed way 散步; 闲逛; 溜达
- 2 take a stroll... go for a stroll...
- 3 It is no use pretending that you don't want to go for a stroll with her. N2L68
- 4 I'm glad that we took a stroll together. L2
- 5 He wished that he had gone for a stroll with her last night. L12

/'ɪm.pʌls/

impulse n.

- a sudden strong desire to do something without thinking about whether it is a sensible thing to do
- 心血来潮, 一时的念头, 冲动
- 1 Leo was known as "the singer", for he always had a sudden impulse to stand up and sing. L14
- 2 Rosa had an impulse to tell Henry the truth.
- 3 Acting on an impulse, he decided to visit his sister. N2L49

/'dʌzən/

dozen n. 12个

- 1 dozens of sth. sb. /a lot of
- 2 He's got dozens of suits but he doesn't like any one of them.
- 3 It astounded everybody that dozens of people were killed in the car accident. L19
- 4 Dozens of doctors and nurses have been working day and night for weeks. N2L52

/'fænsi/

fancy v. 想要 喜欢

- 1 She didn't fancy (= did not like) the idea of going home in the dark.
- 2 She is always doing that, and I don't fancy the idea of living with her. L2
- 3 N2L68 fancy doing sth. fancy meeting you here.

- One man's meat is another man's poison
- it is illogical to do sth.
- turn sb's stomach
- sick to my stomach
- animal fat
- a received more abuse than
- associate a with b
- appeal to sb.
- After a heavy shower...
- be in the shower 淋浴
- take a shower
- take a stroll... go for a stroll...
- have the impulse to do sth.
- dozens of sth. sb.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

23 Story+Expressions

- for instance
- at the idea of...
- The sad truth is that+句子
- be brought up to do sth
- stick to sth.
- notice sb. doing sth.
- be delighted to do sth.
- stay to dinner = stay for dinner
- to sb's dismay
- take possession of sth.

for instance = for example

- For instance, my father expects me to be a teacher. L22
- For instance, Leo stared at the picture for 15 minutes last night. L22
- For example, he is always in debt. L21

at the idea of ... 一想到; 一想起

- She was very unhappy at the idea of staying in London. was/why/who...
- Because of this, she was shocked at the idea of flying to Europe. L21
- Many parents may be shocked at the idea of paying \$100 for a pair of shoes. N2L19

The sad truth is that+句子

- The simple truth is that there isn't enough money to pay for it. N2L11
- The sad truth is that he doesn't like you any longer. L18
- The truth is that anyone [who...] takes no interests in this kind of thing. L18

be brought up to do sth.

- to care for a child, teaching him or her how to behave; 从小长到大就...
- They were brought up to respect authority.
- We'd been brought up to think that borrowing money was bad.
- He was brought up to keep his word. L19

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

stick to sth. 坚持下去

- Why didn't you just stick to it? I, Tonya (2017)
- Stick to the main roads and you won't get lost.
- Leo was determined to stick to his decision.

notice sb. doing sth.

- Did you notice him leaving the party early?
- I was going to leave when I noticed someone entering the room.
- He was sure no one had noticed him talking to the journalist. N2L78

be delighted to do sth.

- very pleased and happy
- Sandy will be delighted to see you. will/who/why...
- I was delighted to be invited to her party.
- I was delighted to know that you'd learnt that by heart. L22

stay to dinner = stay for dinner

- A: "Would you like to stay to dinner, Jeff?"
- B: "Sure! I'll have to ask my parents first."
- I don't have cause to stay to dinner. L22
- Not only did he stay to dinner last night, ... L5

to sb's dismay N2L7 to sb's surprise

- Much to my dismay, she was out when I called. L22
- To my dismay, I didn't have an opportunity to do that. L12
- To their dismay, they were greeted by a very unpleasant smell. L11

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

take possession of sth.

- to start to own something
占有/拥有某物
- When you take possession of a new-build property, have all the locks changed.
—Times, Sunday Times
- If they can't pay their debts, the bank will take possession of their home.
N2L16

homework

- 1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ˈskelɪtən/

skeleton n.

1 a skeleton in the cupboard/closet: to have an embarrassing or unpleasant secret about something that happened in the past: 不可告人的隐私”或“不可外扬的家丑

2 For instance, Every family has a skeleton in the cupboard. L23

3 The only person [I know] [who has a skeleton in the cupboard] is Leo.

/ˈsiːmɪŋ.li/

seemingly adv. apparently

1 appearing to be something, especially when this is not true: 看似; 表面上

2 Her stomach would turn when she thought about this seemingly impossible task. L23

3 For instance, it was a seemingly impossible task. L23

4 Seemingly, we can do nothing to prevent this from happening.

/rɪˈspek.tə.bəl/

respectable adj.

1 behaving well, in a way that most people think is right: 体面的; 值得尊敬的

2 respectable man/person...

3 We need someone who is respectable right now to deal with this. L7

4 Even though this street seems perfectly respectable, ...

/kənˈsiːl/

conceal v.

to hide something: 隐藏; 隐瞒; 掩盖;

1 sth. be concealed from sb. = conceal sth. from sb.

2 Dana concealed her pregnancy from her family and friends.

3 Technically speaking, for a long time his death was concealed from her. L21

4 She tried to conceal the fact that she was pregnant. N2L46

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈvɪvɪd/

vivid adj. vividly adv.

1 producing very clear pictures in your mind

逼真的, 生动的, 清晰的

2 And that night, I had a strange and vivid dream, and wrote it down when I woke up and read it to him. L22

3 I've got vivid memories of that summer. have/who/what...

/drəˈmætɪk/

/ˈdrɑːmə/

/drəˈmætɪkli/

dramatic adj. drama n. dramatically adv.

1 very sudden or exciting: 戏剧性的 激动人心的

2 Your life changes dramatically when you have a baby.

3 If something dramatic has happened during the day, we'll sit and talk about it.

N2L16

4 drama queen: 大惊小怪的人; 小题大做的人; someone who gets too upset or angry over small problems

/ruːn/

ruin v.

to spoil or destroy something completely 破坏; 毁灭

1 If you insisted on doing that, his career would be ruined. N2L40&L68

2 We had an opportunity to go to the beach, but the bad weather ruined our trip. L12

3 Leo was genuinely sorry that he ruined your shirt. L12

4 ruin my day

/ˈherəʊ.ɪn/

heroine n. hero

1 the woman or girl who is the main character in a book, film, play etc 女主角;女主人公;女英雄;女偶像;女豪杰

2 The novel's heroine, Kate Lee, is born in Poland, 1989. L21

3 She blushed when they called her a heroine.

4 She became the heroine of a famous horror movie when she was still 8. L10

/ˈfɪk.ʃən/

fiction n.

1 science fiction (sci-fi)

2 I bet you read a lot of science fiction. L21

3 On the same day, he gave all his science fiction books to Leo. L20

4 The idea that science fiction is useless is mistaken. L18

/ˈveə.rɪ.ɪŋ/

varying adj. 不同的

1 to varying degrees... 在不同程度上

2 To varying degrees, we all want to share something with others. L19

3 To varying degrees, we all have been brought up to respect our teachers. L23

4 All these food, to varying degrees, would turn my stomach. L23

/ˈmedɪ.sən/

medicine n. 医学

1 [Story]: study medicine ...

2 Leo told me that when he was young, he always had this impulse to study medicine. L23

3 His father insisted that he should study medicine. L22

4 It was not until last year that + 句子 L21

/ˈgest/

guest room n.

1 a bedroom for a visitor or visitors to use 客房

2 I'll be more comfortable if he sleeps in the guest room. N2L16

3 It's true that she lives in my guest room, but+句子 L16

4 He heard Leo let out a cry in the guest room. L13

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/ʌnˈpæk/

unpack v.

1 to take everything out of a box, bag, suitcase etc 从(箱、包等中)取出

2 She unpacked her suitcase and went to the beach. did/who/where/why...

3 Maggie carefully unpacked the gifts [she had bought]. N2L28

4 One Friday night when I was unpacking all my things, I started to quarreled with him.

/stæk/

stack v.

1 放成整齐的一叠或一摞、一堆

2 [Story]: After I had stacked my shirts and underclothes in two empty drawers, ...

3 I had the impulse to rush out. L23

4 I took a shower. L23

5 I changed my mind, and went downstairs. L19

/ˈʌn.də.klɒðz/

underclothes n. = underwear

1 buy/sell/wash/wear/change ...v.

2 Listen to me, roll up your sleeves, and wash your own underwear. L15

3 He wished that he had changed his underwear before he went out. L12

4 Now that you don't have any clean underwear, just wash one. L8

/ˈdrɔː/

drawer n.

1 in the drawer / from the drawer...

2 I saw what was in your drawer when I was cleaning. N2L46= the thing that

3 It occurred to me that we could put this in a drawer. N2L46

4 There's a longer letter in the dresser drawer I've been writing for the last week. N2L52

/ˈpetrɪ.faɪ/

petrify v.

- 1 extremely frightened, especially so frightened that you cannot move or think (使)石化; 使吓呆; 使惊呆了;
- 2 be petrified of sth.
- 3 It is illogical to do that, but I'm petrified of spiders. L23
- 4 He was petrified with fear when he saw the gun.

/ˈdæŋ.gəl/

dangle v.

- 1 (使)悬垂, (使)悬挂
- 2 Electric wires were dangling from the wall. were/what/why/where...
- 3 [Story]: A skeleton was dangling before my eyes. was/what/why...
- 4 A big spider is dangling in my room. Because next time this will be dangling from your neck, not mine.

/sweɪ/

sway v.

- 1 to move slowly from one side to another 摇摆; 摆动
- 2 We took a stroll last night, and saw the trees swaying in the wind. did/why/what... L23 N2L35
- 3 The boat swayed from side to side in the storm. did/what/why...

/ʌn.sɪm.pəˈθetɪk/

unsympathetic adj.

- 1 not kind or helpful to someone who is having problems 冷漠的; 无同情心的; 不表示同情的
- 2 I don't mean to be unsympathetic, but I don't see how I can help.
- 3 It astounded me that he was so unsympathetic. L19
- 4 Anyone who was unsympathetic is not welcomed here.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈmedɪ.kəl/

medical adj.

- 1 medical student/school
- 2 I went to medical school with him. did/who/where/when...
- 3 He used to be a medical student. N2L31
- 4 Did you hear about the medical student who...?

- a skeleton in the cupboard/closet
- sth. be concealed from sb. = conceal sth. from sb.
- drama queen
- ruin my day
- science fiction
- to varying degrees
- in the drawer / from the drawer
- be petrified of sth.
- medical student/school

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

24 Story+Expressions

It is all very well , but not in reality.

■好像还行/没问题, 但... ..

used to say that something may seem proper, good, or reasonable by itself but that there are other things that also have to be considered.

■If you say that something is all well and good, you are suggesting that it has faults or disadvantages, although it may appear to be correct or reasonable.

■It is all well and good that you have been enjoying yourself, but you have to start saving your money.

It's all very well to look down on money, but a girl's got to look after herself, these days. *Bright Young Things* (2003)

It's all very well and good hearing about these things, but you've got to get here, and you've got to... you've got to feel it. *Life* (2015)

Well, that's all very well and good, but what about those who work late?
Chopping Mall (1986)

That's all well and good, but we don't have enough time.
The Magnificent Seven (2016)

That's all well and good, but with your agreement, Chef Chandra, I'd like to make a few changes. *Viceroy's House* (2017)

This is all well and good, but can he dance? Could he make millions?
Brain Donors (1992)

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- make one's hair stand on end
- in sb's youth
- show sb. to sw.
- bring sth. with sb.
- it give sb. the impression that + 句子
- be about to do sth.
- leap out at sb.
- once upon a time

make one's hair stand on end

■I told the boy a story [that made his hair stand on end].

■This was the kind of smile [that made your hair stand on end].

■Have you ever heard about the story? It could make your hair stand on end. L15

in sb's youth

■the period of time when someone is young, especially the period when someone is a teenager
在某人年轻时

■I used to play with him every summer in my youth. N2L31

■He reminds me of someone [I knew] in my youth. N2L16

show sb. to sw.

■Sure enough, he showed me to my room. L19

■Please show me to my room, for I'm so tired.

■Technically speaking, Leo show me to my room. L21

bring sth. with sb.

- For some reason, Leo brought that with him last night. N2L21
- You should have brought that with you. N2L65
- It was estimated that he brought 3000 men with him. L17

sth. give sb. the impression that+句子

- Her speech definitely gave the impression that she was interested in the project. N2L20
- I get the impression that he don't want to share this with us. L19
- It gave me the impression that it was designed to do this. L18

be about to do sth.

- 即将做某事 to be going to do something very soon
- I was about to leave when Mark arrived.
- She looked as if she was about to cry. L20
- I think he's about to leave.

leap out at sb.

- I never expected him to leap out at me. L22
- It is clear that you leap out at him first. L21
- And suddenly he leapt out at me. did/who/why/when Who's Harry Crumb? (1989)

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

once upon a time

a long time ago — used at the beginning of children's stories 很久以前

Once upon a time there was this young prince... and he decided that he wanted to go for a drive.
The Sixth Sense (1999)

Once upon a time,
there was a little boy named Henry.
Mr. Church (2016)

Once upon a time,
I met a boy named Hugo Cabret.
Hugo (2011)

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap

/ɪmˈpresɪv/

impressive adj.

- 1 something that is impressive makes you admire it because it is very good, large, important etc.
 给人印象深刻的; 令人赞叹的; 令人敬佩的;
 2 It is said that there are some very impressive buildings in the town. N2L58
 3 The fact [that he is so young] makes his achievements even more impressive. N2L46 L1

/ˈstiːm.ʃɪp/

steamship n.

- 1 a large ship that uses steam to produce power
 2 The captain confirmed that his son wrote an article on the steamship. L1 L5
 3 It was so foggy that the steamship almost hit a small boat when leaving the port. N2L35&L49

/ˈvesəl/

vessel n.

- 1 a ship or large boat: a small fishing vessel
 2 He was accused of operating the fishing vessel while drunk. L16
 3 Leo was astonished to find that the man [on the fishing vessel] was his medicine teacher. L16
 4 They spotted the vessel floating on the river. L1

/ɪə.ərə/

era n. 时代; 年代

- 1 a new era / the beginning/end of an era
 2 His death marked the end of an era.
 did/what/why...
 3 When he died, it seemed like the end of an era.
 4 The birth of their first child marked the beginning of a new era.

/dʒɑː.və/

Java n.

- 1 爪哇

/ˈrʌdə/

rudder n. 舵

- 1 We are not allowed to touch the rudders. N2L10.
 2 The rudder must have been broken during the storm last night. N2L21
 3 The captain was determined to fix the rudder. N2L21

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/rəʊl/

roll v.

- 1 if a ship or plane rolls, it leans one way and then another with the movement of the water or air 颠簸 摇摆
 2 [Story]: The ship rolled from side to side and...
 did/what/why/how/when...
 3 When the ship rolled, Leo woke up with a start. L2
 4 I'm glad that the ship stops rolling. L2

/stɪə/

steer v.

- 1 to control the direction a vehicle is going, for example by turning a wheel 驾驶(船、汽车等); 掌控方向盘;
 2 He is always steering with only one hand. L2
 3 Leo was amazed to find that he was steering with only one hand. L3
 4 He was too drunk to steer the boat. N1L103

/ˈtemp.ərəri/

temporary adj.

- 1 Something that is temporary lasts for only a limited time.
 临时的; 暂时的; 短暂的;
 2 I'm living with my parents, but it's only temporary.
 3 You might want to consider temporary work until you decide what you want to do. N2L19

/plæŋk/

plank n.

- 1 a long narrow piece of wooden board 木板; 板条
 2 That bridge is made of planks. N2L80
 3 Those planks were used to make a new rudder. N2L55
 4 The captain advised us to fix the rudder with these planks. L15

/fɪt/

fit v.

- 1 安置, 安装(在某处)
- 2 a. be fitted with b.
- 3 The rooms were all fitted with smoke alarms.
- 4 All the carpets [we sell] are fitted free.
are/what/why...
- 5 It is disturbing to think that not every house
is fitted with a smoke alarm. L1

/ɪˈkweɪ.tə/

equator n.

- 1 赤道

/dɪˈleɪ/

delay n.

- 1 delay in doing sth.
- 2 After a considerable delay, the report was
finally published. N2L10
- 3 We apologize for the delay in answering your
letter.
- 4 Why was there a delay in warning the public?

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- a new era / the beginning/end of an era
- a. be fitted with b.
- delay in doing sth.

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

25 Story+Expressions

- a. be replaced by b.
- take the lead (in doing sth.)
- lose one's lead
- be struck by
- from side to side
- it became impossible to do sth.
- with great difficulty
- there is a danger that + 句子
- call in on/at
- by now
- There is no doubt that + 句子

a. be replaced by b.

- Typewriters have basically been replaced by computers. N2L10
- The sad truth is that you'll be replaced by someone else in the future. L23 N2L60
- Teachers will never be replaced by computers in the classroom. will/why...

take the lead (in doing sth.)

lose one's lead

- If we take the lead in this, others may follow. N2L16
- They took the lead in solving the problem. N2L64
- This thing convinced me that we lost the lead because of you. L1 L21

be struck by ...被...打击

- The temple burned down after it was struck by lightning last year.
- A house nearby had been struck by a falling tree.
- He is struck by a car while crossing the street. Set Fire to the Stars (2014) N2L49

from side to side

- If something moves from side to side, it moves repeatedly to the left and to the right. 左右,来回(移动);
- The boat swayed from side to side as waves hit it.
- He shook his head slowly from side to side.

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

it became impossible to do sth.

- It became impossible to load the car with this rudder. L12
- It became impossible to change into the suits, for he gain weight during the past few years. L4
- It became impossible to take a short walk in the storm.

with great difficulty

- With great difficulty, he followed his father's instructions. L19
- I finally found a very agreeable situation for my firm, but with some difficulty. L17
- With great difficulty, he tied him to the chair. L16

there is a danger that + 句子

- There is a danger that museums will attempt to entertain rather than educate. L8
- There is always a danger that one can be too busy working to spend time with his family. L6
- There is a danger that your dog might starve to death. L12

call in (on/at)

- to visit a person or place while you are on your way to somewhere else 顺路拜访/参观; 顺道走访
- I called in on Sally yesterday.
- Could you call in on Mum on your way home? ■ Will you call in at the supermarket for some eggs and milk? ■ He called in at the office before he left for London.

by now

■ My parents should have arrived by now. N2L65

■ Surely he must be dead by now.

N2L17 Star Wars: Episode IV—A New Hope (1977)

■ They would have been here by now if they'd caught the early train. N2L64

习惯
用法
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

其他习惯用法

结合学过的语法

There is no doubt that + 句子

■ There is no doubt that we're dealing with a huge problem. L7

■ There is no doubt that these two countries are at war with each other. L14

■ There is no doubt that we will be able to make a lot of money. N2L43 L14

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ˈɪn.flu.əns/

influence v. n.

bad/good/positive etc influence (on somebody) have an influence on somebody/something

1 Leo's mother said I was a bad influence on her son.

2 His works have had an influence on many modern writers.

3 Children are heavily influenced by advertising. N2L10

/praɪd/

pride v.

1 pride oneself on (doing) something = be proud of N2L12

2 I pride myself on that, for...

3 I pride myself on running a safe, clean business. The Client List (2010)

4 Considering what just happened, he clearly prides himself on his course now. L19

/teɪst/

taste n. v.

1 someone's judgment when they choose clothes, decorations etc 鉴赏力, 审美力 have good/bad taste in sth.

2 There is no doubt that some people have really bad taste in clothes. L25

3 No one would accuse you of having good taste, ok? L16

4 All I know at the moment is you have bad taste in men. Trash Fire (2016)

/ɪgˈzɜ:t/

exert v.

1 to use your power, influence etc in order to make something happen 施加

2 exert a subtle/some influence on/over sb.

3 It is impossible for him not to exert some influence on his kids' behavior. N2L48

4 Technically speaking, everything can exert some influence on us. L21

/ˈsʌtəl/

subtle adj.

1 not easy to notice or understand unless you pay careful attention OPP obvious 微妙的 不易察觉的; 不明显的

2 The pictures are similar, but it is said that there are subtle differences between them. N2L58

3 The warning signs of the disease are so subtle that they are often ignored. N2L35

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈæd.və.taɪ.zə/

advertiser n.

1 a person or company that advertises something 广告商; 广告公司; 登广告者; 广告人员

2 There is a danger that man [who are advertisers] will control our mind and life. L25

3 He's about to hit that advertiser on the face. L24

4 That advertise used to be a medical student. L24

/ˈklæsɪfaɪ/

classify v.

1 to decide what group something belongs to 分类; 划分; 将...分类

2 classify a. as/under b.

3 Whatever it is, you can't classify it as an animal.

4 I'm not gonna require you to sell it, but I'm gonna classify it. The Banker (2020) L22

5 He was struck by a car while crossing the street, and they classified it as an accident, but not murder. L25

/ˈmædʒɪk/

magic adj.

1 神奇的; 有魔力的 magic word

2 I know what magic word is in English class.

3 It give me the impression that if I say the magic word, you will help me. L24

4 I don't want to conceal anything from you.

Just say the magic word, and I will tell you. L24

/ˈsɑ:mpl/

sample n.

1 a small amount of a product that people can try in order to find out what it is like 样品, 样本

2 free samples of sth.

3 They were giving out free samples of ice cream at the store.

4 They offer you free samples of products and hope you will buy it at last. L20

/dɪˈvaɪz/

devise v.

1 to plan or invent a new way of doing something
设计; 发明; 想出

2 devise a way/plan to

3 These young couple devised a way to meet each other.

4 They devised a way to prevent this from happening. N2L68

5 They are looking forward to devising a plan to finish this. N2L37

/'kæptʃə/

capture v.

1 If something captures your attention or imagination, you begin to be interested or excited by it. 赢得; 吸引

2 capture the attention of sb.

= capture sb's attention

3 Leo noticed him trying to capture the attention of a young baby. L23

4 Her ponytail swayed from side to side and capture my attention. L25

/mænjuˈfæktʃərə/

manufacturer n.

1 A manufacturer is a business or company which makes goods in large quantities to sell. 制造商; 生产商

2 It was regarded as the greatest car manufacturer of all time. L10

3 Obviously if a manufacturer can reduce his prices, he'll sell more. N2L16

4 The more prices the manufacturer reduces, the more he'll sell. L9

/'wi:l.bærəʊ/

wheelbarrow n.

1 a small cart with one wheel and two handles that you use outdoors to carry things, especially in the garden
手推车; 独轮车;

2 He felt obliged to buy a new wheelbarrow for his father. L12

3 Despite the fact that he get a new wheelbarrow for his father, still... L3

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/bu:t/

boot n.

1 British English an enclosed space at the back of a car, used for carrying bags etc SYN trunk American English (汽车后部的) 行李箱 后备箱

2 Between you and me, the new model has a bigger boot. L4

3 in the boot of sb's/the car...

4 Leo explained that the money was in the boot of his car. L19

/ɪn'gri:di.ənt/

ingredient n.

1 a food that is used with other foods in the preparation of a particular dish: (尤指烹饪)原料, 配料

2 Oddly enough, with a new secret ingredient, the food tastes much better. L18

3 My mom has a secret ingredient when cooking my favorite dish. N2L49

4 If you want to make it at home, the main ingredients are condensed milk, sugar, and love. The Big Sick (2017)

/kreɪn/

crane n.

1 My little daughter takes no interest in this toy crane. L18

2 I think we should take that crane into account. L17

3 It is estimated that the crane [that his father bought last month] was over 5 million dollars. L17

/æn'tɪsɪ.peɪt/

anticipate v.

1 to imagine or expect that something will happen: 预期; 预料

2 Are you anticipating a lot of people at the party tonight? who/why...

3 It is anticipated that the research will have many different practical applications.

4 We should have anticipated that. N2L65

5 We anticipate that sales will rise next year.

单词造句指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- bad/good/positive etc influence (on somebody)
- have an influence on somebody/something
- be influenced by ..
- pride oneself on (doing) something = be proud of N2L12
- have good/bad taste in sth.
- exert a subtle/some influence on/over sb.
- have a subtle mind
- classify a. as/under b.
- say the magic word
- free samples of sth.
- devise a way/plan to
- capture the attention of sb. = capture sb's attention
- in the boot of sb's car
- It is anticipated that + 句子
- sb. anticipate that + 句子

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

26 Story+Grammar+Expressions

as 引导的倒装句表让步

- Much as ...,... 句子
- adj./名词(无冠词)/v. + as ..., 句子
- 为什么要试试自己查语法书?

Much as... , +句子 让步状从

- Much as I'd like to see you, I'm afraid you could not have any free time.
- Although I'd much like to see you, I'm afraid you could not have any free time.

Much as ... , +句子 让步状从

- Much as I like him, I wouldn't want to live with him.
- Although I much like him, I wouldn't want to live with him.

Much as ... , +句子 让步状从

- Much as I would like to stay, I really must go home.
- Although I would much like to stay, ...

Much as ... , +句子 让步状从

- Much as I would like to help you, I'm afraid I'm simply too busy at the moment.
- Although I would much like to help you, ...

Much as I'd like to, it's almost impossible to avoid them.

The Inbetweeners Movie (2011)

Much as I like you, we can stop right here.

Sweet November (2001)

[adj./名词(无冠词)/v.] + as ..., 句子

- Oldest as he is, he works hardest in my class.
- Although he is the oldest, he works hardest in my class.
- Old as he is, he climbed to the top of the mountain.
- Although he is old, he...

But somehow, Izzi, young as she was... she achieved that grace.

Unstoppable (2004)

[adj./名词(无冠词)/v.] + as ..., 句子

- Child as he is, he knows a lot about this.
- Although he is a child, he...
- Detective as he is, he is afraid of blood.
- Although he is a detective, he...

[adj./名词(无冠词)/v.] + as ..., 句子

- v.原型提句首:v. + as + 主语 + 助动词
- Fail as I did, I would never stop trying.
- Although I failed, I...
- Try as she might, she couldn't open the door.
- Although she might try, she...

Okay, so, it's not actually that heavy, but... try as I might, I can't ever get this thing on by myself.

Finding Nemo (2003)

为什么不试试自己查语法书? ——细节过多

- as(so) much as + 变体

As much as John hates to do that, he must stay at home and finish his homework tonight.

- though / that
- Patient though he was, he was unwilling to wait three hours.

为什么不试试自己查语法书? ——细节过多

- 让步状语从句 VS 原因状语从句

Old as he is, he climbed to the top of the mountain.

Old as he is, he has to go to bed early.

为什么不试试自己查语法书? ——细节过多

- 让步状语从句 VS 原因状语从句

Cold as it was, they stayed at home.

Cold as it was, they went swimming as usual.

为什么不试试自己查语法书? ——细节过多

- [adj./名词(无冠词)/v.] + as ..., 句子 [分词+短语etc.]

homework

1. 复习新概念第二册语法, 查阅教学视频, 查中级红皮书(开篇视频)
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
4. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
5. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

- avoid being done
- be free to do sth...
- In sb's efforts to do sth.
- get something for nothing
- enable sb to do sth.
- a. have made it possible for sb. to do sth.
- come along
- buy sth. from sb.

avoid being done

- He was able to avoid being seen by that soldier. N2L43
- Even though he tried to avoid being seen with me, ...
- He managed to avoid being punished.

be free to do sth.

- not under the control or in the power of somebody else; able to do what you want 自由地做某事; 随意做某事;
- You are free to leave at any time.
- For one reason or another, you're free to go or stay. L2
- The students are entirely free to choose their own courses.

In sb's efforts to do sth.

- In his efforts to get the champion, he succeeded.
- In Leo's efforts to help him, he realized that he failed. N2L20
- He failed in his efforts to give up smoking. N2L20

get something for nothing

- Why do you always want to get something for nothing?
- There was a time when these gangsters could get something for nothing in the town. L14
- I'm genuinely sorry that you think you can get something for nothing from me, but you can't. L12

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

enable sb. to do sth.

- The money [which she borrowed from Leo] enabled Jan to buy the house.
- Only teamwork will enable us to finish the work on time. N2L87
- This dictionary will enable you to understand English words. will/what/why...

a. have made it possible for sb. to do sth.

- My parents made it possible for me to study abroad.
- I like him, for the simple reason that he made it possible for me to be here. L4
- So long as you listen to me, I'm gonna make it possible for you to succeed. L7

come along

- to arrive; to appear
- A bus should come along any minute now.
- Take any job opportunity that comes along.
- Leo came along in his car and offered us a lift. L20

buy sth. from sb.

- He's about to buy that from Leo. L24
- Much to Leo's surprise, Berlin bought the car from that guy. L22
- Great minds think alike!!! I also think we should buy the car from that guy, not Leo. L21

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/fɪ'lɒsəfə/

philosopher n.

- 1 My parents made it possible for me to be a philosopher. L26
- 2 Leo was deeply influenced by that philosopher. L26
- 3 Once upon a time, there was a philosopher. L24

/ˈwɪz.dəm/

wisdom n.

- 1 Wisdom is the ability to use your experience and knowledge in order to make sensible decisions or judgments. 智慧
- 2 question/doubt the wisdom of (doing) something 质疑(做) 某事是否明智
- 3 I question the wisdom of giving the child so much money.
- 4 Some people were beginning to doubt the wisdom of their leader's decisions.

/ˈpriːst/

priest n. 神父 牧师

- 1 He has been a priest for over twenty years. has/who/how long/what/why...
- 2 The priest [we met yesterday] has a subtle mind. L26
- 3 To the priest's dismay, nobody was listening to him. L23

/ˈspɪrɪtʃuəl/

spiritual adj.

- 1 Spiritual means relating to people's thoughts and beliefs, rather than to their bodies and physical surroundings. 精神的; 宗教的; 心灵的;
- 2 give sb. spiritual comfort
- 3 She managed to give him some spiritual comfort. N2L67
- 4 No matter how hard you try, you can't give me spiritual comfort. N2L68

/ˈgrʌdʒ/

grudge v. n.

- 1 to do or give something very unwillingly 舍不得给; 不情愿地给
- 2 grudge doing something
- 3 For instance, I really grudge paying for poor service. L23
- 4 have/hold a grudge against sb. 对某人怀恨在心

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈsɜː.dʒən/

surgeon n.

- 1 a doctor who does operations in a hospital 外科医生
- 2 The surgeon offered to lend me money. L14
- 3 He had an opportunity to be a surgeon, but he failed. L12
- 4 Leo realized to his horror that the surgeon was smiling. L10

/ˈpɑː.sə/

passer-by n. passers-by

- 1 A passerby is a person who is walking past someone or something. 路人; 过路人
- 2 You needn't have yelled at that passerby. N2L19&L41
- 3 I would rather kiss a passerby than hug you. L14

/ˈdɪɡ.nə.ti/

dignity n.

- 1 尊严; 自尊 with dignity 有尊严地
- 2 die/treat/do sth. with dignity
- 3 We should be treated with dignity. Most Beautiful Island (2017) N2L21
- 4 There was a time when they did this with dignity. L14
- 5 As long as you treat her with dignity and respect,... L7

/dɪˈlɪbəreɪli/

deliberately adv.

- 1 done in a way that is intended or planned 故意地
- 2 You knew I didn't like it and you deliberately concealed that from me. L24
- 3 Did you deliberately give these to me and try to turn my stomach? L23
- 4 I didn't deliberately show him to your office. L24

/ˈkɒn.sɪ.kwəns/

consequence n.

- 1 something that happens as a result of a particular action or set of conditions 后果; 结果
- 2 She jumped into the river without considering the consequences. N2L20
- 3 have consequences
- 4 I'm glad that you finally realize that actions have consequences. L2 N2L20

/əˈflɪkt/

afflict v.

- 1 to affect someone or something in an unpleasant way, and make them suffer 折磨; 使痛苦;
- 2 be afflicted with/by something 受某事折磨
- 3 The patient is afflicted with the disease, and the surgeon can't do anything to help him.
- 4 I have been afflicted with a cough my whole life.
- 5 I'm afflicted by a rare skin condition.

/iːz/

ease n.

- 1 If you do something with ease, you do it easily, without difficulty or effort. 容易
- 2 with great/considerable ease (=very easily)
- 3 Anne was intelligent and was able to pass her exams with ease. N2L43
- 4 They are expected to win the election with ease. L22
- 5 Lift your voice so that everyone can hear you with ease. N2L59

/ˈneɪ.tʃə/

nature n.

- 1 all the plants, animals and things that exist in the universe that are not made by people
自然; 大自然; 本性; 天性 human nature L26
- 2 love of nature
- 3 He grew up in the countryside, and that explains his love of nature.
- 4 He claimed to have a great love of nature. L1

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/kənˈtempt/

contempt n.

- 1 a feeling that someone or something is not important and deserves no respect 蔑视; 轻蔑; 鄙视
- 2 speak of/treat sb./sth. with contempt
- 3 The opinions of the public should not be ignored or treated with contempt.
- 4 Leo spoke of these "English teachers" with contempt. did/who/why...

/ˈen.vi.əs/

envious adj.

- 1 wanting something that someone else has 嫉妒; 羡慕的
- 2 be/feel/get/become envious of
- 3 Colleagues were envious of her success.
- 4 Why are you feeling envious of her?
- 5 I'm so envious of you, for you get an extra day's holiday.

- question/doubt the wisdom of (doing) something
- give sb. spiritual comfort
- grudge doing something
- have/hold a grudge against sb.
- die/treat/do sth. with dignity
- have consequences
- be afflicted with/by something 受某事折磨
- with great/considerable ease (=very easily)
- love of nature
- speak of/treat sb./sth. with contempt
- be/feel/get/become envious of sb.

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

27 Story+Expressions

- live by doing sth.
- in the light of sth. / in light of
- in terms of
- It is difficult to do sth.
- seem to be
- be the exception to the rule
- in doing something
- choose to do sth.
- be free from sth.
- in the open (air)

live by doing sth.

■If people live by doing a particular activity, they get the money, food, or clothing they need by doing that activity. 靠做某事为生

■He used to live by writing science fiction. N2L31

■These villagers have lived by fishing for 100 years. have/who/how...

in the light of sth. = in light of sth.

■鉴于; 按照, 根据

■In light of the problems we're having, we have no choice but to close the business.

■In light of the way your father ran his business, ... L7

in terms of

■从.....方面(说来)从.....角度看

■He thought of everything in terms of money. N2L22

■You have to talk in terms of dollars and cents, because money is power. Hacker (2016)

It is difficult to do sth.

■It's very difficult to find people who are willing to do the job. L4

■But sometimes it is difficult to know when to give up. N2L20&L50

■It's difficult to explain this to students. N2L33

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

seem to be (do) 看起来似乎 似乎要; 好像

■Much as I hate to say it, we seem to be the exception. L26

■He seems to be a very special person, for Leo offered to help him yesterday. L14

■You seem to need protection. L14

■N2L91 seem to be doing...

/ɪk'seɪʃən/

be the exception to the rule...

■The spelling of this word is an interesting exception to the rule.

■Most of the boys were quite shy, but Larry was the exception to the rule.

■Don't form an unrealistic picture of real life, and think you're gonna be the exception to the rule. L12

in doing something

■while doing something; while something is happening 做某事的过程中

■In trying to protect the queen, Howard had put his own life in danger.

■In attempting to save the child from drowning, she nearly lost her own life. L8

/tʃu:z/

/tʃəʊz/ /tʃəʊ.zən/

choose to do sth. chose chosen

■I chose to learn German rather than French when studying abroad. N2L49

■Why do so few women choose to become engineers?

■If they chose to greet him in the street, he would be angry. N2L40

be free from sth. 免受/免于

- At last he's totally free from pain. L22
- The microscope must be free from vibration.
- There is no doubt that everyone wants to be free from fear. L25

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

in the open (air)

- Working in the open air has made him very healthy. N2L20
- The children love playing out in the open. N2L50
- He is now taking a stroll in the open air. L23

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/w e ə z / /' s i : l . v ə . w e ə /

wares n. silverware n.

- 1 small products for selling, especially in a market or on the street: 商品; (通常指在街上或集市上出售的)货物
 2 They loaded the boat with wares last night.
 L12. did/who/when/why/what...
 3 At least, 30 craftsman will be selling their wares at the village fair tonight. N2L13
 4 He travelled from town to town to sell his wares. did/where/who...

/' æ ŋ k ə /

anchor v. n.

- 1 When a boat anchors or when you anchor it, its anchor is dropped into the water in order to make it stay in one place. 下锚
 2 Artemisia's ship is being anchored in neutral waters. 300: Rise of an Empire (2014) N2L10
 3 After they anchored the boat, they paid money to the captain. L14

/ d e k /

deck n.

- 1 The deck of a ship is the top part of it that forms a floor in the open air which you can walk on. 甲板
 2 Leo found Berlin standing on the deck and waving to someone. L1 N2L14
 3 He's been working on the deck all afternoon. N2L52
 4 Not only did I leave my wedding ring on the deck, ... L5

/ t e m p t /

tempt v.

- to try to persuade someone to do something by making it seem attractive 诱惑; 引诱; 吸引
 ■tempt somebody into doing something
 ■tempt somebody to do something
 ■be tempted to do something 忍不住做某事
 1 The new program is designed to tempt young people into studying engineering. L18
 2 It would take a lot of money to tempt me to quit this job.
 3 I'm tempted to buy that dress.

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/' b a : . g ɪ n /

bargain v. n.

- 1 to discuss the conditions of a sale, agreement etc, for example to try and get a lower price 讨价还价
 2 bargain with sb.
 3 If you bargain with them, they might reduce the price.
 4 I also know how to bargain with customers and always make a profit. N2L80
 5 make a bargain with... 达成协议

/ d ɪ s ɪ m ' b a : k /

disembark v.

- 1 to get off a ship or aircraft 下(船、飞机等);
 2 We weren't allowed to disembark until an hour after the ship had anchored. N2L10
 3 If you had listened to me, we would have disembarked already. N2L60
 4 The captain ordered us to disembark as soon as possible. N2L43

/ ə ' s eɪ l /

assail v.

- 1 to cause someone to experience a lot of unpleasant things: 困扰; 使苦恼; 纠缠
 2 be assailed by sb./sth. : if you are assailed by unpleasant thoughts or feelings, they worry or upset you
 3 Leo was suddenly assailed by doubts.
 4 [Story]: I was assailed by a man who wanted to sell me a diamond ring. was/who/why...

/ ' m a : . b ɔɪ l /

marble n. 玻璃球

- 1 He used to live by selling marbles. L27
 2 It is difficult to win marbles from these children. L27
 3 When I was still a little kid, I used to play marble with my friends in the open air almost everyday. L27

/ɪnˈskraɪb/

inscribe v.

1 to carefully cut, print, or write words on something, especially on the surface of a stone or coin 刻; 在...上写(词语、名字等);

2 be inscribed on something

3 For one cause or another, his name was inscribed on the stone. L2

4 Leo was amazed to find that his name was inscribed on the watch which his father gave to him last year. L3

/'feɪ.və/

favour n. favor

1 a thing that you do to help somebody; 好处, 优惠, 恩惠

2 as a special/personal favor (to sb.) / do me a favor

3 I'm going as a favor to Ann, not because I want to.

4 And as a special favor, she believed, they were allowed to leave room now. L10

5 Just do me a favor and don't call me anymore. Colossal Youth (2018)

/dʒeˈstrɪkjʊ.leɪt/

gesticulate v.

1 to make movements with your arms and hands, usually while speaking, because you are excited, angry, or cannot think of the right words to use (讲话时) 做手势

2 After gesticulating at each other, they both fell silent and looked at their drinks. N2L49

3 As soon as he spotted her, he began gesticulating wildly.

4 He was gesticulating wildly at me, but I could not understand what he was trying to tell me.

/aʊt'reɪ.dʒəs/

outrageous adj.

1 very shocking and extremely unfair or offensive, unacceptable or very shocking 无法容忍的; 骇人的; 令人惊讶的

2 it is outrageous (that) 太离谱了 太不像话了

3 It's outrageous that the poor should pay such high taxes.

4 No matter how outrageous we think it is, it happened right in front of everyone. N2L68

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/θrʌst/

thrust v.

1 to push something somewhere roughly 硬塞给 thrust sth. into sw. (my hands)

2 She thrust a letter into my hand.

did/what/why/who...

3 He nervously thrust his hands into his pockets.

4 He thrust some money into my hand and told me to drive him to the airport.

- on the deck
- tempt somebody into doing something
- tempt somebody to do something
- be tempted to do something 忍不住做某事
- bargain with sb.
- make a bargain with... 达成协议
- be assailed by sb.
- be inscribed on something
- as a special/personal favor (to sb.)
- do me a favor
- it is outrageous (that) 太离谱了 太不像话了
- thrust sth. into sw. (my hands)

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

28 Story+Expressions

- speed to sw.
- sb. have no intention of doing sth.
- I can't conceal the fact that + 句子
- sb. be impressed by sth.
- go to great lengths to do sth. 竭尽全力做某事
- prove that + 句子
- get rid of sb.
- at the base of sth.
- let me have it
- indicate that + 句子
- reduce the price to \$
- keep doing sth.
- keep on doing sth. N2L78
- throw up one's arms ...
- get back to sw.
- fill a. with b.
- to this day

sb. have no intention of doing sth.

- I have no intention of going to the wedding.
- She told him that she had no intention of marrying him.
- I have no intention of taking a shower right now. L23

I can't conceal the fact that + 句子

- She tried to conceal the fact that she was pregnant.
- I can't conceal the fact that I like her.
- He managed to conceal the fact that he was a medical student. N2L67 L24

sb. be impressed by sth.

- I am very impressed by your husband's business, and he seems to be the exception to the rule. L27
- I'm impressed by the fact that he runs a successful business. N2L46 L7
- It's said that our boss was impressed by your work. N2L58

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

sb. go to great lengths to prove that+句子

- go to great lengths to do sth. 竭尽全力做某事
- Jane goes to great lengths to explain that this is not the whole story.
- prove that + 句子
- He wanted to prove that he was just as clever as his sister.

get rid of sb.

- to find a way to make someone leave because you do not want the person to be with you any longer: 摆脱某人
- We finally got rid of my little sister by telling her scary stories.
- Are you trying to get rid of me?
- It is difficult to get rid of him. L27

at the base of sth. 在...的底部

- Much to our surprise, there is a door at the base of the tower. L22
- You could find my name at the base of that statue.
- The squirrel disappeared into a hole at the base of the tree.

indicate that + 句子

- to show that a particular situation exists, or that something is likely to be true 表明; 显示; 暗示; 示意
- This would indicate that she always think of relationships in terms of money. L27
- My investigations also indicate that she's been trying to avoid being seen for a long time. L26

reduce the price to \$

- It is difficult to reduce the price to \$100. L27
- If you can reduce the price to \$50, I will try to persuade him to buy it from you. N2L54 L26
- He was influenced by my words and reduce the price to \$60. L26

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

get back to sw.

- I was eager to get back to work as soon as possible. N2L57
- She managed to get back to Germany. N2L67
- Are you ready to get back to work? Skyfall (2012)

fill a. with b.

- It astounded me that the little bird filled the bucket with water. L19
- Oddly enough, the little bird filled the bottle with water. L18
- He should have filled the bottle with wine. N2L65

to this day

- up to now: even now: continuing until today; : up to the present time 至今; 直到现在
- To this day, I still don't know what happened.
- To this day, I still don't understand why he did it.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈlɑːdʒ.li/

largely adv.

- 1 mostly or mainly, to a great extent 在很大程度上
- 2 The manager was largely responsible for the team's victory. N2L71
- 3 I largely work with people [who are armed with guns]. L2

/ˈkɒmɪk/

comic adj. n. 漫画

- 1 amusing you and making you want to laugh 滑稽的; 喜剧的; 使人发笑的
- 2 comic book/movie/novel
- 3 I saw the child reading a comic novel. N2L35
- 4 He lived by writing and selling comic books. L27

/juː.nɪˈvɜː.səl/

universal adj.

- 1 existing everywhere or involving everyone: 普遍存在的; 全体的; 广泛适用的
- 2 have (a) universal appeal 具有普遍的吸引力
- 3 It is difficult to write a song that has universal appeal. L27
- 4 The beauty of the sunset has a universal appeal and, by now, has been admired by countless people around the world. L25

/kəˈmɪː.di.ən/

comedian n.

- 1 someone whose job is to tell jokes and make people laugh 喜剧演员
- 2 He was regarded as one of the best comedian in the history. L10
- 3 You will have an opportunity to meet our best comedian tonight. L12
- 4 They accused that comedian of stealing the car. L16

/dɪsˈteɪstfəl/

distasteful adj.

- 1 unpleasant or morally offensive 讨厌的; 令人反感的; 使人不愉快的;
- 2 The bad language in the film was distasteful, and the director apologize to the public. L16
- 3 If you find this very distasteful, please tell me. N2L16

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈpestə/

pester v.

- 1 to annoy someone, especially by asking them many times to do something 不断打扰, 纠缠
- 2 pester somebody to do something
- 3 The kids have been pestering me to buy them new toys. N2L52
- 4 The kids kept pestering me to read stories to them. L28

/dred/

dread v.

- 1 to feel anxious or worried about something that is going to happen or may happen 畏惧; 担忧, 忧虑
- 2 dread doing something / dread somebody doing something
- 3 In fact, I dreaded coming back. L21
- 4 You've dreaded talking about him since we met.
- 5 Technically speaking, Tim dreaded his parents finding out. L21

/rɪˈkʌvəri/

recovery n.

- 1 the process of becoming well again after an illness or injury 恢复; 痊愈; 康复
- 2 make a complete/quick/speedy/slow recovery
- 3 My father has made a full recovery from the operation.
- 4 He got an electric shock last month, but he made a quick recovery. L18
- 5 Our doctors are very impressed with your recovery. L28

/ˈplɑːstə/

plaster n.

1 熟石膏

2 She broke her leg a month ago and it's still in plaster.

3 My left leg has been in plaster for about six weeks.

4 The doctor went to great lengths to prove that his hand must remain in plaster. L28

/kənˈsoʊl/

console v.

1 to make someone feel better when they are feeling sad or disappointed 安慰; 慰藉; 抚慰

2 console sb./yourself that + 句子

3 He consoled himself that he would see Kate again soon.

4 He consoled himself that [Tim looked like a nice boy, who could be a good playmate for his daughter]. N2L77

/ˈhɒbəl/

hobble v.

1 to walk with difficulty, especially because your legs or feet hurt 蹒跚; 跛行; 瘸腿走

2 I hurt my foot, and had to hobble home.

3 Aunt Sophy hobbled slowly across the room. did/who/why/when...

4 I am going to stop and hobble very slowly in the opposite direction. Morbius (2022)

/ˈkɒm.pən.seɪt/

compensate v.

1 to provide something good to balance or reduce the bad effects of damage, loss, etc. 补偿; 弥补

2 compensate (for something) = make up for

3 Nothing can compensate for the loss of one's health.

4 I should be compensated for that. N2L21

5 I don't eat breakfast but I make up for it at lunch.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈmʌm.bəl/

mumble v.

1 to say something too quietly or not clearly enough, so that other people cannot understand you 咕哝; 嘟哝; 口齿不清地说;

2 A woman over there was mumbling to herself, and made a spectacle of herself. N2L96

3 He mumbled something, but I didn't hear. 4 What else did I mumble in my sleep?

- comic book/movie/novel
- have a universal appeal
- pester somebody to do something
- dread doing something
- dread somebody doing something
- make a complete/quick/speedy/slow recovery
- console sb./yourself that + 句子
- compensate (for something) = make up for

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

whether...or not 主从

- 1 whether 引导的主从
(whether/whether or not/ whether... or not)
- 2 不可被if替代
- 3 whether 引导的让步状语从句

- 主语从句: 一个句子做主语
- whether 引导的主从 (whether/whether or not/ whether... or not)
- [Whether she comes or not] makes no difference.
- [Whether or not he will attend the party] is still uncertain.
- [Whether we should buy a new car] is something we need to discuss.

[Whether or not your letter gets sent] will be based on your behavior.
The Stanford Prison Experiment (2015)

[Whether or not this was in fact the correct boy] was not relevant to my decision.
Appaloosa (2008)

[Whether or not he's a hero] doesn't really concern us.
Resurrected (1989)

[Whether I believe it or not] is of no importance.
The Man from Earth (2007)

[Whether the work achieves its original goals] is another question.
I.D. (1995)

whether...or not 引导的让步状语从句

- 翻译: 无论是否”或“不管是否
- Whether it rains or not, I shall go out tomorrow.
- Whether or not/no they liked it, they had to give up the plan.
- Whether you like it or not, you still have to do your homework.

Whether or not you're good people, it's not me that needs convincing.

His House (2020)

Whether or not he or she will ever admit it, it's a simple fact.

Moonlight Mile (2002)

Whether you like it or not, you're going into that yard.

Felon (2008)

Whether you love jeff or you hate jeff, jeff has sacrificed his body for years and years and years.

Jeff Hardy: My Life, My Rules (2009)

have 的用法

...he man still had his right leg in plaster

▪ **have: 保持 used to say that your body or something else is in a particular position or state, because you moved or did something**

- It is too hot, you must have all the windows open.
- I have my hands on my hips.
- He had his back against the wall.
- We have our eyes wide open

No, I had my leg in a cast for three months.

xXx (2002)

One night I woke up, I had my hands around her neck.

Thank You for Your Service (2017)

29 Story+Expressions

- be bound up with
- find it hard to do sth.
- make sb. laugh to tears...
- stem from...
- come into fashion
- base a. on b.
- judge for yourself
- do one's best...(to do sth.)
- take heart ...
- be good for sb.
- in the process

be bound up with

- closely connected with something 与...关系密切
- Mark's problems are all bound up with his mother's death when he was ten.
- His success was bound up with his determination and hard work. was/what
- Economic progress is closely bound up with educational development.

find it hard to do sth.

- I find it hard to tell the difference. N2L42
- I find it hard to believe that you are interested in fishing. N2L20
- I find it hard to accept the fact that she's left me. N2L46

make sb. laugh to tears...

- make sb. laugh
- I like Ron, for he makes me laugh.
- Leo claimed to have made his students laugh to tears. L1
- While he was cooking, he set the kitchen on fire, and this make his mom laugh to tears. N2L95

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

stem from...

- to start or develop as the result of something: 源于
- Most people's insecurities stem from something that happened in their childhood.
- My problem stems from the fact that +句子

come into fashion 流行起来

- It is long skirts that have come into fashion again. N2L58
- This sort of clothes seem to be coming into fashion again. N2L91
- The news convinced me that this skirt has come in to fashion again. 句子 L1

base a. on b.

- If you base one thing on another thing, the first thing develops from the second thing. be based on L9
把A建立在B的基础上(基于a在b的基础之上)
- The director based his movie on a real story. did/who/what/why...
- He based his conclusions on the evidence given by Leo.

judge for yourself

- I'll give you all the facts so that you can judge for yourself. N2L59
- I should have let you judge for yourself. N2L65
- Whether the director based his movie on a real story or not is something you can judge for yourself.

do one's best...(to do sth.)

- 竭尽全力
- It doesn't matter if you fail, just do your best.
- He was doing his best to avoid situations that stressed him.
- I did my best to take care of Leo.

take heart...

- to feel encouraged: 振作起来

Nothing is hopeless. Take heart.
Under Siege (1992)

I know times have been hard, but take heart, You'll always have a home here with me.
My Own Love Song (2010)

But take heart. Last night something occurred to Holmes, and he suddenly realized how stupid he'd been.
Without a Clue (1988)

be good for sb. 对某人有利/好处

- Watching too much TV isn't good for you. N2L20
- My mom went to great lengths to prove that fresh fruit and vegetables are good for you. L28
- A bowl of hot chicken soup will be good for you. will/what/why...

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

in the process

- while doing something 在此过程中
- I was moving some furniture and I hurt my back in the process. (= while I was doing it)
- I stood up to say hello and spilled my drink in the process.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap

/ˈleɪ.bəreɪ/

labourer n. laborer

- 1 someone whose work needs physical strength, for example building work 劳动者
- 2 The farm laborer went to great lengths to prove that he hadn't stolen the sheep. L28
- 3 He could give these farmer laborers spiritual comfort. L27
- 4 Why did that farmer laborer hold a grudge against you? L27

/əʊ.vəˈnaɪt/

overnight adv.

- 1 一夜之间; 在晚上; 在夜间
- 2 Much to my surprise, she stayed overnight in the hotel. L22
- 3 You can stay overnight if you want to.
- 4 suddenly or surprisingly quickly 突然
- 5 How did he become a millionaire overnight?

/heɪ/

hay n.

- 1 Hay is grass which has been cut and dried so that it can be used to feed animals. 干草; (用作饲料的)草料
- 2 in the hay...
- 3 It seems that the children were playing in the hay. L9
- 4 After a heavy shower, no one wants to sit in the hay. L23

/kɔ:n/

corn n.

- 1 玉米; (小麦等)谷物
- 2 For instance, my father likes to eat corn bread for breakfast. L23
- 3 After he had taken a shower, he got some corn bread for breakfast. L23
- 4 I think corn bread is good for you. L29

/ˈmu:n.laɪt/

moonlight n.

- 1 in the moonlight
- 2 They walked along the road in the moonlight. did/who/why...
- 3 I bet they're gonna walk in the moonlight. L21
- 4 They attempted to kiss each other in the moonlight. L20

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/kɒn.jiˈen.jəs/

conscientious adj.

- 1 careful to do everything that it is your job or duty to do 认真的; 一丝不苟的
 - 2 a conscientious student/teacher/worker
 - 3 Jenny is a conscientious manager, and very popular with her colleagues. N2L94
- be popular with**
- 4 She was a conscientious worker, and we'll miss her.

/səˈspekt/

suspect v.

- 1 to think that something is probably true, especially something bad 怀疑
- 2 suspect (that) + 句子
- 3 I suspected that there was something wrong with the engine.
- 4 I began to suspect (that) they were trying to get rid of me. L28
- 5 I suspect (that) she might be lying. N2L19

/dɪˈzɜ:t/

desert v.

- 1 to leave the army, navy etc without permission 擅离(部队) 抛弃, 离弃, 遗弃(某人)
- 2 John decided to desert the army because he took no interest in war. L18
- 3 He deserted the army and now is being judged by a military court. N2L10
- 4 Helen was deserted by her husband.

/ˈredʒɪ.mənt/

regiment n.

- 1 A regiment is a large group of soldiers (军队的) 团
- 2 You will return to your regiment at once.
- 3 A large number of people, animals, or things: a regiment of
- 4 He cooked Thanksgiving dinner for a regiment of friends and family.

/ˈæk.ʃən/

action n.

- 1 fighting during a war 战斗 be killed in action
- 2 His father was killed in action in Vietnam.
- 3 His father was killed in action when he was eleven.
- 4 She learned that both her sons had been killed in action in France.

/rɪˈkluːs/

recluse n.

- 1 someone who chooses to live alone, and does not like seeing or talking to other people 隐士; 隐居者
- 2 She became a recluse after her two sons were murdered.
- 3 If you don't get out more, you're going to turn into a recluse.
- 4 I find it hard to talk to that recluse. L29

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- stay overnight in the hay
- in the moonlight
- suspect (that) + 句子 a regiment of
- be killed in action

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

30 Grammar

every time: 时间状语从句 whenever

- Every time I listen to your advice, I get into trouble.
- Every time I walked by the lake, I thought of my childhood.
- My neck hurts every time I turn my head.

You don't need to ask me every time you need to go take a piss. Just go. Understand?

The Shawshank Redemption (1994)

Every time I came home from the hospital, Daisy was here.

Wonder (2017)

wake up to find that +句子

- to do sth. 表结果

The next day, Allie woke up to find her world completely changed.

The Notebook (2004)

old elder eldest

- old older oldest: sb./sth.

- old elder eldest: sb.

His elder son Liam became a lawyer.

- Don't say 'elder than someone'. Say older than someone: She was two years older than me.

30 Story+Expressions

- for years
- stay up
- it became an accepted fact that
- be supposed to
- remain in doing
- be none other than
- think it one's duty to do sth.
- keep sb. in hiding
- find it impossible to do sth.

for years: for a long time

- Rachel and I have been going there for years. N2L52
- They are said to live there for years. N2L58
- This is the worst storm we've seen for years. N2L8

stay up

- If you stay up, you remain out of bed at a time when most people have gone to bed or at a time when you are normally in bed yourself. 熬夜; 深夜不睡
- I used to stay up late with my mom and watch movies. N2L31
- The kids were allowed to stay up till midnight on New Year's Eve. N2L10

it became an accepted fact that+句子

- meaning that it is widely acknowledged and believed to be true 这已成为公认的事实
- It becomes an accepted fact that this is good for your health. L29
- It became an accepted fact that he based his movie on a real story. L29

be none other than ...

- used to emphasize the surprising identity of a person or thing. 不是别的而正是
- When the door opened, we were surprised to see none other than the President himself. N2L51
- When the curtain went up, the main performer on stage was none other than the famous dancer, Leo. L22
- The winner was none other than our favorite actor, Tom Hanks.

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

be supposed to ...

- to be expected or required to do/ be something according to a rule, a custom, an arrangement, etc. 应该 L22 sb. be expected to do sth.
- Sarah is supposed to play the role of Juliet in the school play. L22
- The hotel is supposed to offer free breakfast to all guests. L20
- According to the rules, players are supposed to catch the ball with their bare hands. L21

remain in hiding

- means to continue or persist in a particular action or state 保持在XX的状态
- That convinced him that he should remain in hiding. L1
- Leo advised me to remain in hiding. L15
- Because of you, I had to remain in hiding for years. L21

sb. think it one's duty to do sth.

- She thinks it her duty to help her elderly neighbor with grocery shopping.
- She thinks it her duty to support her family and provide for their needs.
- The soldier thinks it his duty to defend his country and protect its citizens.

keep sb. in hiding

- The detective decided to keep the key witness in hiding until they could write an article on this case. L5
- Not only did the police keep the witness in hiding, but also provided protection. L5
- The family kept their pet in hiding so that they could have an opportunity to surprise their child on their birthday. N2L59 L12

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

find it impossible to do sth.

- The small country found it impossible to gain its independence from the powerful empire. L9
- Now that the store is closed, we find it impossible to buy groceries. L8
- He finds it impossible to sleep so long as the lights are on in his bedroom. L7

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ˈlʌvə.bəl/

lovable adj.

1 If you describe someone as lovable, you mean that they have attractive qualities, and are easy to like.

讨人喜欢的; 惹人爱的

2 The lovable kid reached for a cookie, spilling milk from the glass in the process. L29

3 The lovable cat dreads taking a bath and getting wet. L29

/ɪkˈsen.trɪk/

eccentric n.

1 If you say that someone is eccentric, you mean that they behave in a strange way, and have habits or opinions that are different from those of most people. 古怪的人

2 The eccentric millionaire loved to bargain with street vendors. L28

3 The eccentric artist chose to live by painting and selling his artwork. L27

4 The eccentrics are not easily influenced by peer pressure. L26

/dɪs.rɪˈɡɑ:d/

disregard v.

1 If you disregard something, you ignore it or do not take account of it. 不顾; 漠视; 不理睬

2 disregard social conventions 无视社会习俗

3 He totally disregarded all the advice [he was given].

4 The officer ordered the soldiers to disregard their fear. N2L43

5 You cannot disregard the fact that heart disease is the biggest killer in the western world.

/kənˈven.jən/

convention n.

1 A convention is a way of behaving that is considered to be correct or polite by most people in a society. 习俗 风俗

2 It's just a social convention that men don't wear skirts.

3 Mary felt obliged to wear a formal dress to the wedding because of social convention. L1 L21

4 Technically speaking, she followed the social convention and wore a formal dress to the wedding. L21

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ɪˈkɒn.jəs/

conscious adj. aware

1 noticing or realizing something 有意识的; 注意到的

2 be conscious of (doing) something

3 sb. be conscious that + 句子

4 I was conscious that I was being watched.

5 They are conscious that they have to sacrifice their personal interests for the success of the team. L4

6 I was very conscious of the fact that I had to make a good impression.

/ɪnˈveə.rɪəbli/

invariably adv.

1 If something invariably happens or is invariably true, it always happens or is always true. 总是 经常地

2 It invariably rains when I go there.

does/why/when...

3 It gave me the impression that hard work invariably leads to success. L24

4 The person [who works hard] invariably achieves their goals.

/ruːˈti:n/

routine n.

1 常规; 例行程序 daily routine 日常事务 A daily routine is the things you do every day, like waking up, eating, working or going to school, and going to bed

2 My daily routine has an influence on my productivity at work. L26

3 In my daily routine, there is a danger that I might oversleep and be late for work. L25

4 In my daily routine, there is no doubt that having a healthy breakfast is important. L25

/ʃruːd/

shrewd adj.

1 clever at understanding and making judgements about a situation 精明的; 敏锐的; 有眼光的; 精于盘算的;

2 a shrewd businessman

3 The shrewd businessman knew that his old machinery had to be replaced by newer models. L25

4 The shrewd businessman decided to stay for dinner with his potential clients. L23

/ek.sən'trɪsɪti/

eccentricity n.

1 Eccentricity is unusual behavior that other people consider strange. 古怪; 怪癖; 反常; 古怪行为

2 As a teacher, Kate's mother has a reputation for eccentricity. N2L58

3 The sad truth is that his eccentricity sometimes causes others to laugh at him. L23 N2L88&L82

/'ledʒəndri/

legendary adj.

1 very famous and talked about a lot by people 传奇的; 传说的; 享有盛名的; 非常著名的;

2 Visitors to the museum hope to catch sight of the legendary painting. L2

3 The legendary singer should have retired after a long and successful career. N2L65

4 The legendary detective was able to solve the problem of the missing diamond. N2L64

/snɒb/

snob n.

1 a person who admires people in the higher social classes too much and has no respect for people in the lower social classes 势利小人

2 The snob refused to put forward a plan that would benefit everyone. N2L64

3 The snob accidentally set the curtains on fire while trying to light a candle. N2L95

/'ɪntensli/

intensely adv.

1 extremely or strongly: 强烈地 in a very great or very strong way

2 The scientist's research intensely proved that climate change is a real and urgent problem. N2L94

3 To his father's horror, they loved each other intensely. L10

4 At first, the old man disliked the boy intensely. L19

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/bɪ'dræɡəld/

bedraggled adj.

1 looking untidy, wet, and dirty, especially because you have been out in the rain 给泥水弄脏的

2 After walking in the rain, her hair was bedraggled and wet. N2L49

3 She was bedraggled when she came in because of the rain outside.

4 I barely recognized the bedraggled figure who was standing in the rain.

/dʌmp/

dump v.

1 to put something somewhere in a careless untidy way 丢下 扔下

2 dump sth. on sth.

3 She dumped her books on the table and took a short walk outside. L19

4 He dumped the dirty dishes on the table after being forced to cook dinner. L20

/ə.pɒlə'dʒetɪk/

apologetic adj.

1 If you are apologetic, you show or say that you are sorry for causing trouble for someone, for hurting them, or for disappointing them. 道歉的

2 be apologetic about/for sth.

3 She was apologetic about forgetting her friend's birthday on the same day. L20

4 She was apologetic about accidentally breaking the vase, technically speaking. L21

/'reprɪmɑːnd/

reprimand v.

1 If someone is reprimanded, they are spoken to angrily or seriously for doing something wrong, usually by a person in authority. 斥责; 训斥

2 reprimand sb. for (doing) sth.

3 He was reprimanded by a teacher for talking during class.

4 The parent reprimanded their child for not doing their homework, I bet. L21

/steɪdʒ/

stage v. n.

- 1 If you stage an event, you organize it 筹划
- 2 The museum is planning to stage an exhibition. N2L38
- 3 There is no doubt that he staged this whole thing. L25
- 4 You've staged an elaborate joke to capture my attention. L26

/ɪ'læbəreɪt/

elaborate adj.

- 1 very complicated and detailed; carefully prepared and organized 精心制作/构思的
- 2 elaborate plan/design/meal
- 3 It's important to have an elaborate plan before starting a complex project. N2L49
- 4 The project manager was quick to make decisions and have an elaborate plan to finish the program on time. L21 N2L81

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- disregard social conventions
- be conscious of (doing) something
- sb. be conscious that + 句子
- daily routine 日常事务
- dump sth. on sth.
- be apologetic about/for sth.
- reprimand sb. for (doing) sth.
- elaborate plan/design/meal

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

31 Story+Expressions

- draw attention to sb.
- win sb. sth.
- add a. to b.
- up to the time of sth.
- go on foot
- be caught in
- sb. request to do sth.
- present sb. with sth.
- invite sb. to do sth.

draw attention to sb.

- make others notice or pay attention to a specific person 引起某人的注意
- The flashing lights on the police car were supposed to draw attention to the onlookers. L30
- The loud cheers from the crowd drew attention to them as they were walking in the open air. L27
- It is anticipated that the research findings will draw attention to the brilliant scientist. L26

win sb. sth.

- 给某人赢得某物
- Her outstanding performance in the competition won her a gold medal as a result. N2L90
- She won her best friend a gift from her trip to Paris and they have kept in touch with each other ever since. N2L88

add a. to b.

- Do you want to add your name to the list?
- The doctor advised her to add exercise to her daily routine for better health. L15
- You should add sugar to your coffee to make it sweeter, but please don't regard it as a healthy choice. L14

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

up to the time of sth.

- 直到某事发生时
- She continued to care for her father up to the time of his death. N2L42
- Up to the time of his death, he had dedicated his life to helping others. L14
- Up to the time of his death, he consistently reminded his children to look both ways before crossing the street for their own protection. L14

go on foot 步行

- After finishing my work, I like to go on foot to the nearby park. N2L49
- It is disturbing to think that we have to go on foot. L1
- We decided to go on foot and give our friend a surprise visit at their workplace. L2

be caught in

- being trapped or unable to escape from a situation or circumstance 被困在"、"陷入"、"遭遇" 或 "受困于"
- She was caught in a sudden rainstorm and received a warm welcome when she asked for help at a nearby cafe shop. L8
- The hiker was caught in a sudden snowstorm and had to find one cave until it passed.

sb. request to do sth.

- The child requested to have ice cream and was impatient to eat it. L13
- The teacher requested the students to follow her instructions during the science experiment. L19
- The teacher requested the students to settle the argument by listening to each other's words. L21

present sb. with sth.

present sth. to sb. L22

▪to give something to someone, for example at a formal or official occasion

把某物赠送/呈现/颁发/献/提交给某人

- I decided to present my sister with a beautiful necklace for her birthday, and in fact, she liked it a lot. L21
- I need you to present me with the documents [that are in the boot of your car]. L26

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

invite sb. to do sth.

- I wouldn't invite my boss to talk about my ideas during the meeting, for he tends to lose his temper easily. N2L78
- The company invited customers to try their new product in order to make a profit. N2L80

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ˈsæɪ.l.vɪdʒ/

salvage v. n. 救助 营救 打捞

- 1 打捞作业 salvage operation
- 2 The salvage operation was delayed because of bad weather. L21
- 3 Technically speaking, that was not even a salvage operation. L21
- 4 Sure enough, the salvage operation went on for days. L19

/ˈbæərənts/

Barents n.

- 1 巴伦支海

/ˈsʌŋ.kən/

sunken adj.

- 1 has fallen to the bottom of the sea or the ocean, or of a lake or river; 沉没的; 沉入水底的 a/the sunken ship
- 2 Archaeologists found a sunken ship [that dates from ancient times]. L3
- 3 They happened to discover a sunken ship while conducting underwater research. L3

/ˈkɑː.gəʊ/

cargo n.

- 1 the goods that are being carried in a ship or plane (船或飞机装载的)货物;
- 2 The ship carried a cargo of fresh fruits and vegetables from Shanghai. did/what/why...
- 3 We have the privilege of unloading a cargo of fresh fruits from the ship. L4
- 4 The workers get impatient when waiting for a cargo of fresh fruits. L5

/ˈbʊliən/

bullion n. un.

- 1 Bullion is gold or silver, usually in the form of bars. 金(或银)条
- 2 The ship was loaded with gold bullion. L12
- 3 He was impatient to sell his gold bullion and make a profit before the price dropped. L13 N2L80
- 4 The company decided to reward their top employee with gold bullion. L15

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈskəʊə/

scour v.

- 1 to search a place or thing carefully and completely in order to find sb./sth. (彻底地)搜寻; 搜查
- 2 I will scour the entire country if I have to. Off the Rails (2021)
- 3 Realizing his mistake, John scoured the entire building to find his neighbor and apologize to her. L16

/ˈtʃest/

chest n.

- 1 a large strong box, usually made of wood, used for storing things in and/or moving them from one place to another 大箱子
- 2 She dumped her clothes on the chest. L31
- 3 After years of research, it became an accepted fact that the chest [found in the sunken ship] belonged to a famous explorer from the 18th century. L30

/ˈkɒntents/

contents n.

- 1 N2L44: When she caught up with them, she saw that they had sat down and were going through the contents of the bag.

/bɪˈlɒŋɪŋz/

belongings n.

- 1 Your belongings are the things that you own, especially things that are small enough to be carried. 财物; 随身物品
- 2 She packed her few belongings in a bag and left. did/who/why/what...
- 3 When moving to a new house, it's important to pack your belongings carefully and do your best to ensure they arrive safely. L29

/ˈaɪtəm/

item n.

1 a single thing, especially one thing in a list, group, or set of things 一件商品(或物品)

2 You ought to have taken those items with you. N2L65

3 Are these items up for sale? N2L47

4 It occurred to me that the items [you gave me last night] belong to Leo's father. N2L46

/ˈkruːzə/

cruiser n.

1 巡洋舰

2 As soon as they finish repairing the cruiser, nothing will prevent them from attacking us. N2L68

3 At last, they managed to fix the cruiser. N2L67 L22

/faɪnd/

find n. thing

1 something that someone finds, especially by digging or by searching under water 发现物

2 The chest proved to be a valuable find. N2L77

3 The famous archeologist confirmed that it was a real valuable find. L1

/lɒg/

log book

1 航海日志

2 The captain grabbed a cup of coffee and started to read the log book. L6

3 The captain was too busy working to check the log book. L6

4 At the end of the journey, the captain gave the ship's log book to the authorities. N2L76

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈpiːs/

piece v.

1 If you piece something together, you gradually make it by joining several things or parts together. 拼凑成整体

2 piece together 拼凑出(真相) / 拼凑成整体

3 The detectives tried to get enough money to piece together the facts. L2

4 Archaeologists have worked for years to piece together the clay fragments of fifteen statues. L3

/ˈkɒn.vɔɪ/

convoy n.

1 a group of vehicles or ships travelling together, sometimes in order to protect one another 护航; 护送

2 The cars, in a convoy, went to extremes to reach their destination on time. L5 N2L87

3 The boats, in a convoy, sailed across the open sea at a fantastic speed. L6

/tɔːˈpiː.dəʊ/

torpedo v. n.

1 用鱼雷袭击 to attack or destroy a ship with a torpedo

2 When you play this game, never draw attention to yourself, for you will be torpedoed by other players. L31

3 It became an accepted fact that their ship was torpedoed by an enemy submarine. L30

/sʌb.məˈriːn/

submarine n.

1 a ship, especially a military one, that can stay under water 潜水艇

2 My brother is fanatical about submarines and spends hours reading books about them. N2L83

3 It is now known that the famous submarine was torpedoed by the enemy. N2L82

/'neɪ.vəl/ /'neɪ.vɪ/

naval adj. navy n. 海军

1 relating to the navy or used by the navy 海军的

2 a naval officer

3 A naval officer discovered that the ship was heading in the wrong direction. N2L81

4 The captain asked a naval officer to take charge of the ship while he was away. N2L79

/'mɪnɪ.stri/

ministry n.

1 Ministry of Defence 国防部 Agriculture 农业

部 Health 卫生部 Justice 司法部

2 He works in the Ministry of Defence.
does/who/where/why...

3 That must be someone from the Ministry of Education. N2L17

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- salvage operation
- a cargo of
- piece together
- in a convoy
- a naval officer

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

32 Story+Expressions

- sb. be under the impression that+句子
- together with
- come to light

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

sb. be under the impression that+句子

- I was under the impression that the work had already been completed.
- I was under the impression that you weren't coming until tomorrow.
- She was under the impression that her parents would reprimand her for failing her exam. L31

together with

- in addition to something else; including
- Just bring it back to the store, together with your receipt/rɪ'si:t/.
- Our meal arrived, together with a bottle of red wine.
- He sent her some books, together with a dictionary.

come to light

- if new information comes to light, it becomes known 揭露; 显露; 为人所知
- Leo is conscious that new evidence has recently come to light. L31
- Before new evidence come to light, she has always led a normal life. L9

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ˈpreljʊ:d/

prelude n.

■ You can describe an event as a prelude to another event or activity when it happens before it and acts as an

introduction to it. 前奏; 序幕; 序曲

■ a prelude to something 某事的前奏

- 1 I was under the impression that reading was a necessary prelude to sleep, for him. L32
- 2 They suspected that this was just a prelude to a larger attack. L30
- 3 The dark clouds in the sky were a prelude to the storm.

/ʌn.fəˈsi:n/

unforeseen adj.

1 an unforeseen situation is one that you did not expect to happen. 始料不及的; 未想到的; 意料之外的

2 unforeseen + changes/problems/circumstances ...

- 3 Despite the unforeseen problems, they can still make progress. N2L88
- 4 Because of unforeseen circumstances, we have to close the parking lot. L21
- 5 Due to unforeseen changes in the schedule, I find it impossible to attend the meeting tomorrow. L30

/ˈsiə.ri:z/

series n.

1 A series of things or events is a number of them that come one after the other. 系列; 串联; 连续.

a series of 一系列, 一连串

- 2 She received a series of free samples of different biscuits before deciding which one to buy. L26
- 3 They solved a series of complex math problems with great difficulty. L25

/kəˈtæs.trə.fi/

catastrophe n.

1 A catastrophe is an unexpected event that causes great suffering or damage. 灾难; 灾祸; 横祸; 不幸事件

2 be a catastrophe for sb. 对某人来说是一场灾难

- 3 Whether this is a catastrophe for the company or not is still unknown. L29 主从
- 4 Whether he agrees or not, failing the exam would be a catastrophe for his academic future. L29 让步状语从句

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈkrɒkəri/

crockery un.

1 Crockery is the plates, cups, and dishes that you use at meals. 餐具 陶器

- 2 I accidentally dropped the crockery and they all broke into pieces.
- 3 There was a time when crockery was made by hand. L14
- 4 I can't conceal the fact that I accidentally broke one of the crockery plates while washing the dishes. L28

/ˈsʌbʊ:b/

suburb n.

1 an area where people live which is away from the centre of a town or city 郊区; 城外;

2 in the suburbs / a suburb of city

- 3 I was born and brought up in a suburb of New York City. L23
- 4 Many families choose to live in the suburbs because they... L27
- 5 In the suburbs, I often have the impulse to start a small garden and grow my own vegetables. L23

/kəˈlaɪd/

collide v.

1 if two people, vehicles, etc. collide, they crash into each other with...碰撞; 与...相撞

2 In everyday English, people usually say run into rather than collide with

- 3 Her car ran into the back of a truck.
- 4 The student collided with another student in the hallway and the teacher reprimanded them both for running. L31

/ˈlɜː.nə/

learner n.

1 British English someone who is learning to drive a car 学习者
learner driver 初学驾驶员

2 The learner driver's friends tried to tempt him into driving over the speed limit, but he refused to do so. L28

3 Instead of speaking of learner drivers with contempt, we should offer them support. L27. N2L78

/ˈpænɪk/

panic n.

■ a sudden feeling of great fear that cannot be controlled and prevents you from thinking clearly 恐慌; 惊恐
■ get into a panic 陷入恐慌

1 The moment I couldn't find my wallet, I started to get into a panic and immediately shared the news with my family. N2L60 L19
2 The hiker lost his way in the forest and got into a panic as the sun started to set.
3 She got into a panic when she couldn't find the tickets.

/ˈwɪnd.skriːn/ /ˈwɪnd.ʃiːld/

windscreen n. windshield

1 the large window at the front of a car, bus etc 挡风玻璃
2 I came back and found(to find) a parking ticket on the windscreen.
3 He has no intention of cleaning the windshield. L28
4 Why did you buy the windshield from him? L26

/əˌlɒŋˈsaɪd/

alongside prep. adv.

■ 与...一起; 在...旁边; 与...同时; 沿着;
■ draw up alongside: To move into a position next to someone or something in motion. 并排行驶

1 Nick caught up with me and walked alongside. N2L44
2 I knew I had a chance to win the race when I drew up alongside the fastest girl.
3 The police officer drew up alongside us and ordered us to pull over. N2L43
4 I was driving on the highway and a large truck drew up alongside me.

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/slaɪd/ /slɪd/

slide slid slid v.

1 滑动 slide off/open
2 The glasses slid off the table onto the floor.
3 My book slid off my knee, and the noise captured my cat's attention. L26
4 As the doors slid open, he glanced at a man who made his hair stand on end. N2L49 L24

/streɪ/

stray adj.

1 A stray dog or cat has wandered away from its owner's home. 走失的; 离群的; 无主的; stray dogs 流浪狗
2 As I walked through the park, a stray dog suddenly appeared and barked, making my hair stand on end. L24
3 When I saw the stray dog shaking in the cold, I had the impulse to bring it home. L23

/kənˈfjuː.ʒən/

confusion n.

1 Confusion is a situation in which everything is in disorder, especially because there are lots of things happening at the same time. 混乱局面
2 There is some confusion about sth. 困惑
3 There is some confusion about who is responsible for this project. N2L71
4 The research clearly indicates that there is a great deal of confusion about what people believe and why they believe it. L28. N2L56

greedily adv. devour v.

in a way that shows that you want more money, power, food, etc. than you really need 贪婪地; 贪心地;

If a person or animal devours something, they eat it quickly and eagerly.

1 He greedily ate the entire pizza. did/who...

2 It is estimated that the stray dog greedily devoured the steak. L17

3 Tom was astonished to find that his little sister greedily devoured all of his favorite ice cream. L16

4 The child greedily ate all the cookies. On the other hand, he refused to touch his vegetables. L11

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- a prelude to something
- unforeseen + changes/problems/circumstances
- a series of
- be a catastrophe for sb.
- in the suburbs / a suburb of city
- collide with=run into
- get into a panic
- draw up alongside
- slide off/open
- stray dogs
- There is some confusion about sth.

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

33 Story+Expressions

- get out of control
- What invariably happens is that+句子
- set up a chain of reactions
- keep an eye on sb.
- be/speak/talk on the phone
- hang up (on sb.)
- attend to sb./sth.
- reduce sb. to tears
- on a big/large/small scale
- drawing up alongside
- rush hour
- pull up
- all of a sudden = suddenly
- pile up
- get the traffic on the move
- sweep up
- benefit from sth.

get out of control

- 失去控制
- If you are impatient to do something, wait and think and avoid letting it get out of control. L13 N2L68
- It comes as a surprise to learn that the plane got out of control and crashed. N2L90

What invariably happens is that+句子

- What invariably happens is that he could make everybody laugh to tears at the party. L29
- What invariably happens is that walking in the open air could make you happy. L27
- What invariably happens is that + get something for nothing L26

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

set up a chain of reactions

- set up: to start a process or a series of events 引发
- a chain of 一系列; 一串; 连锁
- It is as if this was about to set up a chain of reactions. L24
- The sad truth is that he didn't know he set up a chain of reactions. L23
- He tried to play a joke on his girlfriend and set up a chain of reactions. L22

keep an eye on sb.

- to look after someone or something and make sure that they are safe
注意; 留意;
- We've asked the neighbours to keep an eye on the house for us while we are away.
- Will you keep an eye on my daughter for a while?

be/speak/talk on the phone 在通话

- We spoke earlier on the phone.
- My wife was talking to someone on the phone when I entered the room.
- We talked on the phone for over an hour, and found it impossible to help our friend. L30

hang up (on sb.)

- to finish a telephone conversation
挂断电话
- I said goodbye and hung up.
- The boss angrily reprimanded the employee for hanging up on an important client during the phone call. L31
- She hung up the phone, for she was under the impression that the conversation had ended. L32

attend to sb./sth.

- If you attend to someone who is hurt or injured, you care for them.
照顾某人/处理某事
- The teacher quickly attended to the student who fell and hurt their legs.
- Are you conscious that I have some urgent business to attend to. L31

reduce sb. to tears

- If I reduced her to tears, I would apologize to her. L16
- They were amazed to find that the letter reduced her to tears. L4
- The movie had an influence on her, and reduced her to tears. L26

on a big/large/small scale 大/小规模地

- What works on a small scale can be a disaster on a large scale.
- Behaviors [that are safe on a small scale] can become a series of catastrophes on a big scale.
- They are under the impression that the work will be done on a big scale. L32

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

rush hour

- The rush hour is one of the periods of the day when most people are traveling to or from work.
(上下班时的)交通高峰期
- Do you realize the rush hour starts in an hour?
- During rush hour, I invited my friend to join me for a cup of coffee after work. L31
- She finds it hard to find a parking spot during the busy rush hour. L29

pull up

- When a vehicle or driver pulls up, the vehicle slows down and stops. (车或驾车者) 减速停下
- He went to great lengths to pull up in front of the gates. L28
- She was about to pull up her car when she realized she had forgotten her keys. L24

all of a sudden = suddenly

- I was walking down the street, and all of a sudden, I saw a cat climbing a tree. Oddly enough, it was wearing a tiny hat. L18
- On her way to the grocery store, all of a sudden, she ran into an old friend [she hadn't seen in years]. L15

pile up

■to become larger in quantity or amount
(使)堆积; (使)堆放; (使)成堆; (使)(工作、问题、损失等)积聚;

■The work just keeps on piling up and makes me want to scream. N2L78

■It is disturbing to think that problems are piling up at work. L1

get the traffic on the move

■Technically speaking, it is Leo who got the traffic on the move, not you. L21 N2L58

■It looked as if/though he would get the traffic on the move. L20

■This was designed to get the traffic on the move. L18

sweep up 清扫; 扫除

■Whether you sweep up those broken bottles or not, we will call the police. L29

■He thought it his duty to sweep up all these broken bottles. L30

■It is outrageous that they refused to sweep up the glasses. L28

习惯
用法
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

其他习惯用法

结合学过的语法

benefit from sth. 从某事物中获益

■If you had listened to your mother's advice, you would have benefited from that. N2L64

■He benefited from his friend's sense of humor, as they always knew how to make him laugh to tears. L29

■I bet you benefited from my mother's advice. L21

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能 听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ænˈti:k/

antique n.

- 1 old and often valuable 古董; 文物; 古玩;
- 2 antique shop/store/desk/jewelry...
- 3 She visited the antique shop and was impressed by the owner's good taste. L28
- 4 He decided to sell his antique desk and was willing to bargain with potential buyers. L4 L28

/fæsɪˈneɪ.ʃən/

fascination n.

- Fascination is the state of being greatly interested in or delighted by something. 着迷; 魅力; 入迷; 极大的吸引力;
 - hold/have a fascination for sb./ sth. 对某人/某事着迷
- 1 Antique shops have a certain strange fascination for me. do/why/what...
 - 2 Oddly enough, water holds a fascination for most children. L18
 - 3 He has a fascination for art, but the idea that [everyone can be a great artist] is mistaken. L18

/fəˈbɪdɪŋ/

forbidding adj.

- 1 seeming unfriendly and frightening 令人生畏的;
- 2 forbidding place/look...
- 3 The dark forest can be a forbidding place, and we should take the warnings about bears seriously. L1
- 4 The ancient church, a forbidding place, has stood there for hundreds of years. L8

/'mʌstə/

muster v.

- to get enough courage, confidence, support etc to do something, especially with difficulty 激起/鼓起(支持、勇气等)
 - muster (up) the courage/confidence/ to do something
- 1 At last, I mustered up the courage to ask her out. L22
 - 2 If you had mustered up courage, she might have been your wife. N2L64
 - 3 I mustered up the courage to ask my boss for a raise, but I became envious of my coworker when they received one instead. L27

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/prɪˈten.ʃəs/

pretentious adj.

■ trying to appear important, intelligent, etc. in order to impress other people; trying to be something that you are not, in order to impress 自命不凡的; 炫耀的; 虚夸的;

- 1 He is so pretentious that he only drinks expensive coffee and laughs at anyone who enjoys a normal cup. N2L35&L82
- 2 I found Susie very pretentious. N2L4
- 3 He is so pretentious that he would rather be alone with his thoughts than have conversations with others. L14

/'læbərɪnθ/

labyrinth n.

- 1 迷宫; 曲径 in the labyrinth of sth.
- 2 It is easy to get lost in the labyrinth of trees.
- 3 In the labyrinth of traffic, one car [braking suddenly] can set up a chain of reactions that causes a traffic jam. L33
- 4 Finally, after getting through a labyrinth of corridors, she found his office.

/'mʌs.tɪ/

musty adj.

- 1 a musty room, house, or object has an unpleasant smell, because it is old and has not had any fresh air for a long time 发霉的; 有霉味的;
- 2 What's more, the hotel room was dark and musty. L15
- 3 Leo was astonished to find that all his clothes smelt musty. L16

/'ræ.rə.tɪ/

rarity n.

- 1 a person or thing that is unusual and is therefore often valuable or interesting. 珍品; 稀有物
- 2 It's true that owning a vintage car is a rarity, but I would rather buy a new one than get an old one. L16 L14
- 3 It is outrageous that clean water is still a rarity in some parts of the world. L28

/əˈsɔː.tɪd/

assorted adj.

- 1 of various different types/sorts 各种各样的
- 2 There must have been a bag of assorted sweets on the table. N2L17
- 3 They have no intention of sharing the assorted sweets with anyone else. L28 L19
- 4 It is clear that she bought a large bag of assorted sweets for the movie night. L21

/dʒʌŋk/

junk n.

- 1 things that are considered to have no use or value 废旧物品 junk mail
- 2 Oddly enough, this cupboard's full of junk. L18
- 3 She was under the impression that the junk mail was important, so she opened it. L32
- 4 The company should be apologetic for sending so much junk mail to my mailbox. L31

/'lɪtə/

litter v.

- 1 if things litter an area, there are a lot of them in that place, scattered in an untidy way 乱扔;
- 2 be littered with something
- 3 It astounded the guests that the entrance hall is littered with toys. L19
- 4 The floor was littered with cigarette ends, and I had the impulse to clean up the mess. L23

/'dedɪ.keɪ.tɪd/

dedicated adj.

- You use dedicated to describe someone who enjoys a particular activity very much and spends a lot of time doing it. 专心致志的; 一心一意的;
- 1 She is a dedicated student who spends hours studying every day. N2L59
- 2 It is anticipated that a dedicated student [who works very hard] will be very successful. L26
- 3 The support and encouragement from their family have made it possible for a dedicated student to fulfill his dream. L26 L17

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/'bɑː.gɪn/

bargain hunter

- 1 someone who is looking for goods at a cheap price 到处寻找, 廉价货的人, 淘便宜货的人
- 2 As a bargain hunter, I am always conscious that I should compare prices before buying anything. L31
- 3 It became an accepted fact that he used to be the best bargain hunter in the company. L30

/'diː.lə/

dealer v.

- 1 a person whose business is buying and selling a particular product 交易商; 贸易商
- 2 She bought the painting from a Swiss art dealer. L26
- 3 She's an art dealer who worked with Alan. 4 The art dealer was surprised when, all of a sudden, a famous artist walked into his gallery. L33

/'tʃerɪʃ/

cherish v.

- 1 珍惜 cherish the hope 抱有(信念、希望)
- 2 sb. cherish the hope that + 句子
- 3 You must cherish the hope that she will invite you to stay overnight. L31 L30
- 4 You must cherish the hope that he wasn't killed in action. L30
- 5 She cherishes the hope that her parents will notice her practicing the piano every day. L23

/'æmplɪ/

amply adv.

- 1 in a way that is more than enough: 充足地; 充足地, 充裕地;
- 2 The company amply rewarded its employees with a bonus at the end of the year. L15 N2L76
- 3 The hotel amply provided its guests with breakfast and Wi-Fi during their stay. L5

/ˈmɑːstəpiːs/

masterpiece n.

1 a work of art such as a painting, film, book, etc. that is an excellent, or the best, example of the artist's work

杰作, 代表作

2 The painting was considered to be a masterpiece by the public. L17

3 They're about to turn that into a masterpiece. L24 N2L66

4 Her work is a masterpiece of (= an excellent example of) simplicity.

/ˈmɪə/

mere adj.

1 used when you want to emphasize how small, unimportant, etc. somebody/something is 仅仅的; 只不过

2 It took her a mere 20 minutes to win the game. N2L50

3 The mere fact 从句 + ... 仅仅是这个事实就...

4 The mere fact that [he forgot to lock the door] caused the situation to get out of control. N2L88 L33

/praɪz/

prise v.

1 撬开; 强行使分开; prise something open

2 With great difficulty, he managed to prise open the rusty lock on the old chest. L25

3 The child attempted to prise open the peanut butter but couldn't do it. L8

4 They found their children trying to prise open the window of the house. L1

/kɑːv/

carve v.

1 雕刻 carve a. from/out of b. = a. be carved from/out of b.

2 The sculptor was anxious to carve a beautiful statue from a huge stone. L22

3 He was about to carve a pumpkin lantern from a large pumpkin when his friend arrived. L24

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈdæɡə/

dagger n.

1 The child pestered his parents to buy him a toy dagger from the store. L29

2 The detective used the dagger to get rid of the evidence before anyone discovered it. L28

3 There is no doubt that the thief used the dagger to break into the safe and steal the jewels. L25

/ˈmɪniətʃəl/

miniature adj.

1 very small; much smaller than usual 微型的; 小型的; 很小的;

2 The child was playing with his miniature train. was/what/who/when...

3 The child carefully placed the tiny toy inside a miniature cupboard to conceal it from his parents. L24

4 My friend used to be petrified of playing miniature golf, but now she enjoys it. L24

/kəm.pəˈzɪ.ʃən/

composition n.

1 (绘画、摄影的) 构图;

2 The course is designed to help students with colour and composition. L18

3 What's more, the composition of the photograph looked nice. L15

4 The composition of the photograph should be taken into account. L17

- antique shop/store/desk/jewelry
- hold/have a fascination for sb./sth.
- forbidding place/look
- muster (up) the courage/confidence/to do something
- in the labyrinth of sth.
- junk mail
- be littered with something
- sb. cherish the hope that + 句子
- The mere fact 从句 + ...
- prise something open
- carve a. from/out of b. =
- a. be carved from/out of b.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

34 Story+Expressions

- There is always hope that+句子
- by chance
- above all
- be bent on doing sth.
- sb. cherish the hope that+句子
- described to sb. what/how...+宾从
- describe sth. to sb.
- pick up
- sb. can't/couldn't be bothered to do sth.
- beg sb. to do sth.
- at the bottom of...

There is always hope that+句子

- There is always hope that the beautiful song will reduce everyone in the room to tears. L33
- There is always hope that he will not be killed in action and will return safely. L30
- There is always hope that the teacher will find time to read a story to the students. L22

by chance

- means happening or occurring unexpectedly or accidentally, without any specific intention or planning 偶然, 碰巧; 意外地
- Do you really expect me to believe you chose this house by chance? The Oxford Murders (2008) L22
- By chance, I saw my neighbor at the grocery store after staying up all night. L30

above all

- You say above all to indicate that the thing you are mentioning is the most important point. 尤其是, 最重要的是
- For me, above all, I find it impossible to not eat chocolate whenever it's in front of me. L30
 - Above all, it is clear that chairs should be comfortable. L21
 - Above all, she could give me spiritual comfort. L27

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

be bent on doing sth.

- to be very determined to do something 一心想要做某事 N2L21 be determined to do sth.
- He was bent on getting married as soon as possible. was/who/why...
- He was bent on quitting his job even though he was making a lot of money. L14

sb. cherish the hope that+句子

- 某人怀抱着希望
- He cherishes the hope that one day they will meet again.
- She cherishes the hope that she will benefit from her hard work. L33
- He cherishes the hope that, in the process, he will learn valuable lessons. L29

described to sb. what/how...+宾从

- describe sth. to sb.
- I need you to describe to me what happened.
- Can you describe to me why this is dear to you? L19
- Please describe to us how you received an electric shock. L18

pick up

- 无意获得/买到 to buy something, acquire or obtain something, especially cheaply or by chance — oxford learners dictionaries
- We managed to pick up a few bargains in the end. N2L67&L1
- While shopping at that store, I picked up a rare book that turned out to be quite expensive. L3

sb. can't/couldn't

be bothered to do sth.

- 某人不想费心(去做某事),某人没兴趣(做某事)
- He couldn't be bothered to do his homework, so he spent the evening playing video games instead. N2L59
- He couldn't be bothered to fix the broken lock, so he prised it open. L34

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

beg sb. to do sth.

- I begged Helen to stay, but she wouldn't listen.
- The child begged his mother to buy him a new toy, but she refused and got rid of his old ones instead. L28
- She begged her parents to let her stay up late, but they said no. L30

at the bottom of

- At the bottom of his desk, he found his favorite comic book. L29
- did/who/where...
- Despite the hurtful words, I choose not to hold a grudge against my friend because at the bottom of my heart I love him. L27

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段,直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ˈdʒʌs.tɪs/

justice n.

■正义, 公正

■justice has been done/served: used to say that someone has been treated fairly or has been given a punishment they deserve. 正义得到伸张

- 1 I described to my friend what happened in court and how justice has been done. L34
- 2 The mere fact that [he died in a car accident] is enough to show that justice has been done. L34
- 3 Sarah was under the impression that justice has been done after he was arrested. L32

/kɔ:t/ /lɔ:/

court n. law n.

- 1 court of law; courts of law 法院; 法庭;
- 2 In the court of law, there is always hope that the truth will be revealed. L34
- 3 In the court of law, the defendant cherishes the hope that their innocence will be proven beyond doubt. L34

/ˈɪn.ə.səns/

innocence n.

- 1 the fact of being not guilty of a crime n. 无辜; 无罪
- 2 I'm conscious that this new evidence will prove their innocence. L31
- 3 They've confirmed that he has evidence which could prove his innocence. L1

/ʌn.dəˈteɪk/

undertake v.

■to accept that you N2L71 are responsible for a piece of work, and start to do it 承担; 负责; 从事

- undertake a task/a project/research/a study/a journey
- 1 They are planning to undertake a journey to learn that by heart. N2L38 L22
 - 2 He successfully undertook the task of fixing the broken chair. did/who/what...
 - 3 She decided to undertake research on climate change.

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈɑːdʒuəs/

arduous adj.

■difficult and tiring, and involves a lot of effort. 艰苦的; 艰难的

arduous task of doing sth. / arduous journey
■go through/embark on/begin arduous journey

- 1 They've already begun the arduous task of carrying their plants to their new home.
- 2 Cleaning the entire house was an arduous task that took me several hours. N2L20
- 3 She began her arduous journey to lose weight by changing her diet and exercising regularly.

/ˈæb.strækt/ /ˈkɒn.sept/

abstract adj. concept n.

- 1 understand + 抽象的+概念 abstract concept
 - 2 Some individuals find it hard to understand abstract concepts like love or happiness. L29
 - 3 [Whether students can understand abstract concepts in mathematics] may be influenced by the quality of their math education. L29
- Whether 引导的主语从句

/mi:t/

mete out

- 1 to give somebody a punishment 给予(处罚)
- 2 The teacher meted out extra assignments to the students who didn't complete their homework.
- 3 The teacher meted out punishment to the student who cheated on the test.

/ɪn.təˈfɪə.rəns/

interference n.

- 1 干涉; 干预; 介入; interference in sth.
- 2 I resent his interference in my work.
- 3 Sorry for the interference, but I think you accidentally took my coat instead of yours.
- 4 I hope you don't mind the interference, but I think you left your umbrella at the restaurant.

/əˈkɔːd/

accord n.

- 1 v. (与...)符合; 一致
- 2 without being asked or forced to do something
- 3 of somebody's/something's own accord
自愿地, 主动地, 自动地
- 4 He decided to go of his own accord.
- 5 The door seemed to move of its own accord.
- 6 Did you leave of your own accord or were you fired?

/'premiːsɪz/

premises n.

- the buildings and land that a shop, restaurant, company etc uses 营业场所; (企业的)房屋建筑 及附属场地
- on the premises of a. 在a店内
- 1 Whether you like it or not, smoking is not allowed on the premises. L29
- 2 [Story]: on the premises of a large jewelry store...
- 3 Can you describe to me how you caught a thief on the premises of a large jewelry store? L34

/kən'veɜːt/

convert v.

- to change something into a different form, or to change something so that it can be used for a different purpose or in a different way 转换; 转化
- convert a. to/into b.
- 1 My parents are genuinely sorry that they converted my bedroom into an office. L12
- 2 She realized to her horror that her parents had converted the spare room into a home gym. L10
- 3 They are likely to convert the attic into a playroom for their children. L9

/dɪs'juːzɪd/

disused adj.

- 1 A disused place or building is empty and is no longer used. 废弃的; 不再使用的;
- 2 disused+railway line/train station
- 3 We took a long walk along a disused railway line. L19
- 4 It became an accepted fact that the disused train station was haunted.

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/'faɪə.pleɪs/

fireplace n. 壁炉

- 1 He's conscious that the disused fireplace needs to be cleaned. L31
- 2 Leo found it impossible to clean that fireplace by himself. L30
- 3 They gathered around the fireplace and watched comic movie all night. L29

/'mʌfl/

muffle v.

- 1 to make a sound less loud and clear, especially by covering something 压抑 (声音); 使 (声音) 降低; 压低
- 2 He tried to muffle the alarm clock by putting it under his pillow. did/who/how...
- 3 He was amazed to find that he could hear muffled voices in the next room. L3
- 4 Between you and me, I heard a muffled cry last night. L4

/tʃɪp/

chip v.

- 1 欧, 削, 凿 chip through the wall...
- 2 [Story]: After chipping through the wall...
- 3 After chipping through the wall, Leo was astonished to find that someone was already there. L16
- 4 After chipping through the wall, it astounded Leo that someone was standing there. L19

/'blækən/

blacken v.

- 1 to make something black; to become black使...变黑, 弄黑
- 2 A few people, their faces blackened by the smoke, ran out of the building. did/who/when
- 3 Much to Leo's surprise, smoke had blackened the walls. L22
- 4 They managed to escape, but their faces were blackened by the smoke. N2L67

/ɪˈmɜːdʒ/

emerge v.

1 to appear or come out from somewhere
(从隐蔽处或暗处)出现; 浮现; 显现. emerge from

2 She finally emerged from her room at noon.
did/who/when...

3 Richard was waiting outside the door as she emerged.

4 The shy kittens finally emerged from their hiding places and the old lady let out a cry of surprise. L13

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- justice has been done/served
- court of law; courts of law
- prove sb's innocence
- undertake a task/a project/research/a study/a journey
- arduous task of doing sth. / arduous journey
- go through/embark on/begin arduous journey
- understand + abstract concept
- interference in sth.
- Sorry for the interference, ...
- I hope you don't mind the interference, but...
- of somebody's/something's own accord
- on the premises of a.
- convert a. to/into b.
- emerge from

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

however

- however adv. 然而
- conj. 让步状语从句 no matter how = however
- However she held the mirror, she couldn't see the back of her neck.
- However long it takes, I will wait for you.
- However carefully I explained, she still didn't understand.

get+done 被动 [口语+语境习]

- I used to have a bicycle, but it got stolen last week.
 - In the end, he got invited.
 - He got caught by the police last night.
- Because they got invited to the party and you didn't.
How to Lose Friends & Alienate People (2008)

35 Story+Expressions

- beyond doubt
- make mistakes
- There are rare instances when
- cease to do
- be independent of
- in part
- run to tell sb.
- ring up
- tap at sth.
- listen for...
- be unable to do sth.
- break into
- be handed over to

beyond doubt

- if something is beyond doubt, it is completely certain 毫无疑问
- prove/show beyond doubt that....
- The research showed beyond doubt that smoking causes heart disease.
- The evidence proves beyond doubt that he is innocent.

/ mɪˈsteɪk /

make mistakes make a mistake

- Don't be afraid to muster up the courage to try new things, even if it means you will make mistakes. L34
- It's natural to make mistakes on a small scale when you're learning something new. L33

There are rare instances when...

- There are rare instances when you pick up a valuable item in one antique shop without even realizing its worth. L34
- There are rare instances when, by chance, you meet a childhood friend you haven't seen in years while on vacation. L34

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

cease to do sth.

- to stop doing something or stop happening 停止做某事
- I will cease to eat junk food to improve my health. will/why/what/who...
- The child begged his parents to cease to scold him for his mistakes. L34

be independent of

- 独立于; 独立的; 不依赖
- It is important for children to be independent of their parents as they grow older and learn to take care of themselves.
- It is important to be independent of others' opinions and make decisions [based on your own beliefs and values]. L9

in part

- L24 to some degree, but not completely; partly 部分地; 在某种程度上;
- She was delighted to receive the job offer and agreed to join the company, in part because of her boyfriend. L23 N2L65
- She was upset, in part, because she felt ignored by her friends.

run to tell sb.

- My sister ran to tell me that our favorite band is coming to town. did/who/when...
- The child ran to tell his parents about the funny incident at school and described it to them. L34
- Sarah ran to tell her brother that she found his lost wallet on the street by chance. L34

ring up = call sb.

- I had to ring up my boss to tell him about the delay, even though I grugged making the call. L27
- I need to ring up my parents and let them know I arrived safely. do/why/who...
- I will ring up my sister to enable her to join the online meeting. L26

tap at sth.

- “轻拍” “轻敲”或“轻击”
- It is illogical to tap at a rock, assuming that it will reveal hidden treasure. L23
- They were impatient to tap at the traffic light, hoping it would change to green sooner. L13

listen for

- to listen carefully so that you will notice a particular sound 留神听
- She couldn't be bothered to listen for her phone ringing, so she missed an important call. L34
- While hiking in the forest, we should listen for the sounds of wildlife. N2L49

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

be unable to do sth.

- N2L43 be able to do sth.
- I was unable to bake a cake because I couldn't tell the difference between salt and sugar. N2L42
- She was unable to talk on the phone as there was no signal in the area. L33

break into

- to enter a building or car by using force, in order to steal something 闯入; 强行进入
- Her house was broken into last week. was/ what/when/whose...
- Someone broke into my car and stole the radio.
- You became a criminal the moment you broke into that store. N2L60

be handed over to = hand sb. over to

- 移交 (犯人等)
- Now that the suspect has been captured, he will be handed over to the police. L8
- The store owner caught the thief and immediately handed them over to the police.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap

/ˈkredʒə.ləs/

credulous adj.

1 too willing to believe what you are told and so easily deceived 轻信的

2 He is so credulous that he believes everything he hears. N2L35

3 We should avoid being fooled and be less credulous about everything. L26

4 I am convinced that we are more credulous than we used to be. L1

/ɪmˈprəʊ.bəl/

improbable adj.

1 It seems (highly/wildly) improbable that...是/似乎是不可能的

2 It seems improbable that he can break the record. N2L36

3 It seems improbable that a gust of wind swept a bed off the roof. N2L49

4 It seems improbable that he has a large circle of friends. N2L63

/əbˈskjʊə/

obscure adj.

1 not well known and usually not very important 不起眼的; 无名的; 鲜为人知的

2 He covered the pile of money with an obscure book. N2L75

3 He turned his attention to some obscure baseball history. N2L70

4 The obscure artist was unable to sell any of his paintings. L35

/ˈmeɪd sɜː.vənt/

maidservant n.

1 He is determined to keep an eye on that maidservant. N2L21 L33

2 It was not until midnight that the maidservant left the owner's house. L21

3 The maidservant lived in poverty all her life. L21

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈpriː.zjuːm/

presume v.

■ to believe something to be true because it is very likely, although you are not certain 假定, 假设

■ be presumed dead/innocent/ guilty

■ presume that + 句子

1 The maidservant, who was presumed dead, proved to be alive. N2L77

2 The man, who was presumed innocent at first, committed a murder. N2L87

3 Why was he presumed guilty if he had an alibi? N2L87

4 I presumed (that) he understood the rules.

/ˈwɪkɪd.li/

wickedly adv.

1 in a way that is morally bad or evil 邪恶地 居心叵测地

2 If you continue to act wickedly, you may lose everything you have. N2L69

3 He glanced wickedly at the man beside the window. N2L49

4 Those who lived wickedly won't die kindly.

/plɒt/

plot v.

■ to make a secret plan to harm a person or organization 密谋 暗中策划

■ plot to do sth. 密谋做某事

■ plot against sb. 密谋对某人图谋不轨

1 Laughing wickedly, he plotted to kill the king. N2L49

2 He was accused of plotting to destroy the country. L16

3 I am astonished to find that he was trying to plot against the prince. L16

/ˈdaʊn.fɔ:l/

downfall n.

- The downfall of a successful or powerful person or institution is their loss of success or power. 垮台; 衰败; 衰落
- L4 lead to sb's downfall 导致某人 的垮台
- bring about sb's downfall 造成某人垮台

1 Who should be responsible for the downfall of Rome? N2L71

2 It seems that he may have plotted the downfall of an empire. L9 N2L19

3 What's more, his poor decisions led to his downfall. L15

4 He refused to listen to advice, and that brought about his downfall.

/naɪˈi:v/

naive adj.

- not having much experience of how complicated life is, so that you trust people too much and believe that good things will always happen 天真的, 幼稚的, 无经验的
- it be naive to believe/think/ imagine...
- sb. be naive enough to believe/ think that...

1 It's naive to believe that we know the secret of success. L4

2 I was naive enough to believe that you would do me a favor. L28

3 The little girl is naive enough to believe that she can find gold by using a treasure map from a story book. N2L55

/ʌnək'septəbəl/

unacceptable adj.

- so bad that you think it should not be allowed 不可接受的
- it be unacceptable to do...

1 It's completely unacceptable to always keep the status quo. L4

2 It's simply unacceptable to hurt other people with no reason.

3 It would be unacceptable to treat others with contempt. L27

4 That's unacceptable. [□]

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/kən'spaɪə/

conspire v.

- (of events) to seem to work together to make something bad happen 共同导致 [不良后果]
- to secretly plan with other people to do something illegal or harmful 合谋, 密谋
- conspire to

1 Time limit and injury conspire to prevent me from finishing the plan. N2L68

2 That policeman was convinced that they conspired to rob the bank together. L1

3 They denied cheating on the exam, even if I knew these students conspired to do so. L16

/ɪn'kredəbəl/

incredible adj.

- impossible or very difficult to believe 难以置信的
- it is incredible (to sb.) that...
- it is incredible how...
- it is incredible to do sth.

1 It's incredible that the police arrived on the scene in time. N2L75

2 It's incredible to me that she never gets up late. N2L2

3 It's incredible how she managed to find out the truth. N2L67&N2L53

4 It's incredible to see you drive fast. N2L35

/rɪ'zeɪm.bləns/

resemblance n.

- bear...a close/strong/striking resemblance to sb./sth. 与...极为相似
- bear little/no resemblance to sb./sth. 与...不相似
- resemblance to...

1 Nobody could account for the fact that the this vase bore a close resemblance to one owned by my mother. N2L46

2 I noticed that the son bore little resemblance to his father. N2L67

3 I was astonished at his strong resemblance to his mother. N2L46

/s kɔːn/

scorn n.

- a strong feeling that sb./sth. is stupid or not good enough, usually shown by the way you speak 轻蔑; 鄙视
SYNONYM contempt
- pour scorn on 嘲笑、嘲讽、蔑视
- pour scorn on idea/suggestion/plan/ advice

1 Much as he pours scorn on my suggestions, I still don't want to give up. L26

2 It is illogical to pour scorn on such a good idea. L23

3 I got impatient after my father poured scorn on my plan for the wedding. L5

/ə'kwɛɪnt/

acquaint v.

- acquaint sb. with sth.
使某人熟悉/了解某事
- sb. be acquainted. with...

1 I intend to acquaint you with my plan. N2L36

2 If I were acquainted with the key information, I would make a perfect choice. N2L40

3 He realized to his horror that the police had already been fully acquainted with the situation. L10 N2L34

/riːjuːnaɪt/

reunite v.

- to bring two or more people together again after they have been separated for a long time; to come together again (使) 再联合, (使) 重新结合; (使) 重聚
- be reunited with sb.

1 I wish that those children could be reunited with their parents after the war. L12

2 I want to be reunited with my best friend who moved away. do/who/why...

3 Despite the distance, Sarah cherishes the hope that she will be reunited with her childhood friend someday. L34

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ə'sju:m/

assume v.

- 假定;假设
- assuming that ...
- it seems/is reasonable to assume that+句子
可以合理地假设/推断/认为...

1 Assuming that you live in a fantasy world, you can get anything you want. N2L95

2 Assuming that you never get married, how will you spend you life?

3 Because of their same uniform, it seems reasonable to assume that they are from the same school. L21

- It seems (highly/wildly) improbable that ...
- be presumed dead/innocent/guilty
- presume that+句子
- plot to do sth.
- plot against sb.
- lead to sb's downfall
- bring about sb's downfall
- it be naive to believe/think ...
- sb. be naive enough to believe/think...
- it be unacceptable to do
- conspire to
- it is incredible (to sb.) that...
- it is incredible how...
- it is incredible to do sth.
- bear...a close/strong/striking resemblance to sb./sth.
- bear little/no resemblance to sb./sth.
- resemblance to ...
- pour scorn on
- pour scorn on idea/suggestion/plan/advice
- acquaint
- sb. with sth.
- sb. be acquainted. with...
- be reunited with sb.
- assuming that...
- it seems/is reasonable to assume that...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

	主动	被动
一般	to do to write	to be done to be written
进行	to be doing to be writing	---
完成	to have done to have written	to have been done to have been written
完成进行	to have been doing to have been writing	---

to do 非谓语结构

to do + to be done 含义+例句

- I have a lot of clothes to be washed.
- The project was supposed to be done last week, but it got delayed.
- The report needs to be done by tomorrow.
- It was difficult not to be tempted. L28

I have to remind myself that some birds aren't meant to be caged.

The Shawshank Redemption (1994)

He didn't want to be called crippled, just like I didn't want to be called stupid. Forrest Gump (1994)

to be doing 含义+例句

- (现在或过去)正在发生的动作+?
- He pretended to be studying while actually playing video games.
- She seemed to be listening, but her mind was elsewhere. N2L91
- ... seem to be doing
- ..., I happened to be walking in my garden when... L23

I happened to be walking past the kitchen yesterday morning... and I heard you calling someone named William. The Remains of the Day (1993)

Morgan, you don't seem to be listening to me. Educating Rita (1983)

to have done + to have been done 含义+例句

- 强调 to do结构中的动作先发生+?
- I am glad to have finished my project.
- They were excited to have done their best in the competition.
- The dishes have to have been cleaned by someone before we can cook dinner.

to have done + to have been done 含义+例句

- ...for the descriptions given by people who claimed to have seen the puma were extraordinarily similar. L1
- A farm worker, who stayed up all night, claimed to have seen a figure cutting corn in the moonlight. L30

Ma'am, I'm so sorry to have kept you waiting, but I have some good news. *Body Brokers (2021)*

I seem to have lost my dog, and I was wondering if, by any chance... Can you describe the animal? *The Shaggy D.A. (1976)*

You were supposed to have been killed last night. *The Naked Gun 2½ 1/2: The Smell of Fear (1991)*

The child is reported missing and is presumed to have been kidnapped. *Cohen and Tate (1988)*

to have been doing 含义+例句

- 谓语句之前已经开始并且一直在持续进行的某一动作
- He seems to have been sitting there all day.
- He was happy to have been staying with his uncle.

The two girls, aged six and seven are believed to have been...playing on this street when they disappeared without a trace. *Prisoners (2013)*

36 Story+Expressions

- a chance in a million
- bring... to a conclusion
- sb. accept the fact that bring about
- and so on
- anyone but
- be thought to
- stop to do
- comment on
- suggest that 暗示
- there is/was a chance that+句子
- needless to say
- towards the end of
- be separated from
- make one's way back
- return to
- What become of

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

bring...to a conclusion by doing...

- They managed to bring the discussion to a conclusion by reaching an agreement. N2L67 & N2L84
- The company finally brought the project to a conclusion last week. did/when/how...
- They brought the meeting to a successful conclusion by devising a great plan. L26

a series of L33

- This website enables me to read a series of electronic books. L26
- The company provides me with a series of new products. L5
- To make matters worse, he made a series of awful dishes. N2L52

sb. accept the fact that

- How can you accept the fact that he is with another woman? L26
- I accepted the fact that I had lost my phone. N2L14
- I was wondering if you have accepted the fact that you didn't get into your dream school. N2L52

bring about 造成, 导致, 带来

- Good habits always bring about positive changes.
- I am not surprised to see him bring about quite a lot of trouble. N2L51&N2L35
- Evidence proved that they plotted to bring about the downfall of the rich family. N2L94

and so on

- He told me the school rewarded him with a large sum of money, and so on. L15&L14
- He said he dedicated his life to education, and so on. L14
- He talked about his close resemblance to his father, and so on.

anyone but

- It seems that they never trusted anyone but each other. L9
- She doesn't take anyone but herself seriously. L1
- It looks as if he never listened to anyone but you. L20

be thought to

- He was thought to have been killed by a puma at large. L1
- They were thought to have been married for ten years. N2L34
- For years, the man was thought to be dead. L30

stop to do

= stop (what sb. was doing previously) to...

- The man who stopped to write his name at the base of the statue captured my attention. L28&L26
- He stopped to bargain with the customer. L28
- Assailed by the online lecture, he stopped to make a study of the ancient Greek culture. L28&L9

comment on

- I am too busy working to comment on other people's personal life. L6
- Bob is very likely to comment on the new movie. L9
- I am learning not to comment on other people's social life.L9

suggest that

- to make someone think that a particular thing is true
- evidence/results/data/studies etc suggest(s) that
- Evidence suggested that they took a long time to comment on the particular problem. L5
- Results suggests that he might have been struck by a car. N2L19&L25
- Studies suggest that there will be a large number of stressed workers next year. N2L63

there is/was a chance that+句子

- There is a chance that he will run to tell his parents about the accident. L35
- There is a chance that the thief will break into the house while we're away. L35
- There is a chance that the teacher will reprimand him for talking during class. L31

习惯
用法
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

其他习惯用法

结合学过的语法

needless to say

- used when you are telling someone something that they probably know or expect 不用说, 当然
- Needless to say, he has a subtle mind. L26
- Needless to say, it will give you spiritual comfort. L27
- Needless to say, his name is inscribed on the stone. L28

towards the end of 在.....即将结束之际

- He filled the jar with coins towards the end of the month. L28
- He got rid of her towards the end of the year. L28
- He is free from fear towards the end of his life. L27

be separated from

- It gives me the impression that he was separated from his parents at a very young age. L24
- This indicates that he was separated from others. L28
- It's hard to imagine that they will be separated from each other. N2L66

make one's way back

- He was able to make his way back to the school. N2L43
- It occurred to me that he couldn't make his way back to the house. N2L46
- It's impossible for him to make his way back to the cave. N2L48

return to

- He admitted that he had returned to the house before. N2L48
- Not only did he return to the house, but he also stole a vase. L5
- I wish that I could return to my family home every holiday. L12

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

what become of...

to happen to; be the fate of

- He wants to know what has become of his family.
- He is responsible for what has become of those children. N2L71
- I'm curious to find out what will become of us. N2L79

- What became of that student who used to live with you?
- I dread to think what will become of them if they lose their home.

homework

1. 复习新概念第二册 语法 查阅教学视频 查中级红皮书(开篇视频)
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
4. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
5. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ɪk'spres/

express n. adj.

- 1 a train or bus that does not stop in many places and therefore travels quickly 特快列车
 2 express=express train/bus
 3 I had a glimpse of the express train. N2L42
 4 I failed to catch the express bus yesterday morning. L16
 5 The express train is speeding to London. L28

/ˈpʌŋk.tʃuəl/

punctual adj. punctually adv.

- arriving, happening, or being done at exactly the time that has been arranged; on time 准时的
 ■be punctual for 准时
 1 We are expected to be punctual for business meetings in Japan. L22
 2 She was determined to be punctual for the appointment yesterday. N2L21
 3 There is a danger that I might not be punctual for the lecture. L25

/kən'di:ʃən/

condition v.

- If someone is conditioned by their experiences or environment, they are influenced by them over a period of time so that they do certain things or think in a particular way. 使适应; 使习惯于, 习得了, 训练
 ■condition sb. to (do) sth.
 sb. be conditioned to do sth.
 1 The sad truth is that hate conditioned him to attack others before others could attack him. L23
 2 The society conditions us to accept what happened instead of thinking. N2L20
 3 Evidence suggests that he has been conditioned to obey his father. L36

/ʌn'ʃeɪ.kə.bəl/

unshakable adj.

- an unshakable faith, belief etc is very strong and cannot be changed or destroyed
 (信仰、信念等) 不可动摇的, 坚定不移的
 ■develop an unshakable belief/ faith in
 1 It's true that he has developed an unshakeable faith in acting. L16
 2 There is no doubt that she has developed an unshakable belief in God. L25
 3 Despite the challenges, he managed to develop an unshakable faith in his own abilities and achieved success. L3&N2L67

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/feɪθ/

faith n.

- 1 a strong feeling of trust or confidence in someone or something 相信; 信任; 信心; 信仰
 2 have/lose faith in sb. /sth. 对...有/失去信心
 3 I wish that he had faith in me. L12
 4 You should always have faith in your dream. L65
 5 She began to lose faith in herself. N2L9

/'kænsəl/

cancel v.

- 1 to decide that something that was officially planned will not happen 取消 (正式安排的事情)
 2 I suspect that his flight might be cancelled. L30
 3 The meeting will be cancelled if our flight isn't punctual. N2L16
 4 I noticed with dismay that the flight I was going to catch had been cancelled. N2L86&N2L34

/ɪk'sep.ʃənəli/

exceptionally adv.

- 1 extremely 极其, 非常
 2 I remembered her for explaining physics exceptionally clear. N2L85
 3 He confirmed that Tom was an exceptionally talented basketball player. N2L87
 4 Only then did I realize that this year has been exceptionally difficult for me. N2L79

/'dɪs.lə.keɪt/

dislocate v.

- to spoil the way in which a plan, system, or service is arranged, so that it cannot work normally
 扰乱, 破坏 (计划、制度或服务的正常安排)
 1 I'm astonished to find that my flight has been dislocated by a heavy fog. L16
 2 It's estimated that traffic will be dislocated by a big snowstorm. L17
 3 There is a danger that an earthquake might dislocate the railway service. L25

/ˈblɛɪm/

blame v.

▀to say or think that someone or something is responsible for something bad 责怪, 指责;把...归咎于

▀blame sb./sth. for... 为... 指责

▀blame sth. on sb. 把... 归咎于

1 You can't blame yourself for everything.

2 It's clear that he was trying to blame himself for what happened. L21

3 It gives me the impression that you are blaming this on me. L24

/kən'sʌlt/

consult v.

▀to look for information in a book, map, list etc 查阅

▀consult the map/manual/dictionary

1 Being a bargain hunter and a traveller at the same time, Susan needs to consult the map regularly. L34

2 I prefer to consult the manual first rather than start working immediately. N2L50

3 Whenever I meet a new word, I can't resist the temptation to consult the dictionary. L14&N2L32

/dɪ'rekt/

direct adv.

1 without stopping or changing direction 中途不停地, 径直地
2 go/fly direct

3 I realized that we could go direct from Beijing to Shanghai. N2L20

4 The new railway line enables me to go direct back to my hometown. N2L88

5 Flying direct to Hong Kong will cost me a large sum of money. N2L21

/ɒd/

odd adj.

▀different from what is normal or expected, especially in a way that you disapprove of or cannot understand 奇特的, 异常的, 古怪的

▀It is/seems odd that...

▀strike sb. as odd... 使某人感到惊讶

1 It seems odd that he volunteered to help you without any benefits. N2L84

2 It's odd that you made no effort to get to the police. N2L78

3 Odd as it may seem, he actually made no progress. L26&N2L88

4 The fact [that he didn't show up to the meeting] struck everyone as odd.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/rɪ'flekt/

reflect v.

▀to think carefully and deeply about something

▀sb. reflect that + 句子

▀reflect on sth. 思考; 反思

1 I had the opportunity to reflect on my behavior when I was alone. L12

2 She took a long walk and reflected on her past. L19

3 After failing the exam, I reflected that I need to study harder. N2L49

/əd'vɑ:n.tɪdʒ/

advantage n.

1 a good or useful feature that something has 好处, 优点

2 Online classes have both advantages and disadvantages. N2L25

3 One of the advantages of living in the countryside is that you can enjoy the quietness of the nature.

/'maɪ.ti/

mighty adj.

1 very strong and powerful, or very big and impressive 强大的; 强而有力的;

2 I caught sight of a mighty puma yesterday. N2L70

3 The police inquired about the mighty tree you cut down yesterday. N2L39

4 They plotted to kill the mighty king. L36

/'dɔ:.dəʊl/

dawdle v.

1 to take a long time to do something or walk somewhere (做事或走路) 磨蹭, 慢吞吞

2 I can't dawdle on this project any more, as the deadline is very close. L18

3 I often find myself dawdling in the park, enjoying the beauty of nature. L1&N2L49

4 If you continue dawdling, we can't catch the express train. N2L69

/tʃʌg/

chug v.

- 1 if a car, train etc chugs somewhere, it moves there slowly, with the engine making a repeated low sound 缓慢的咔嚓咔嚓的开往
- 2 The boat chugged out into the sea.
- 3 Much to my surprise, the old train succeeded in chugging out of the station. L22&N2L36
- 4 I am delighted to see my old tractor chugging along in the field. L23&N2L35

/lɒdʒ/

lodge v.

- 1 lodge a complaint... 进行投诉/提出抗议/提出上诉等
- 2 I intend to lodge a complaint. N2L36
- 3 It occurred to me to lodge a complaint with the travel agency. N2L46
- 4 It took me a lot of time to lodge a complaint about the poor service in the restaurant. N2L50

/kəm'pleɪnt/

complaint n.

- a statement in which someone complains about something 抱怨; 投诉
- have/make/receive/lodge a complaint...
- 1 Please let us know if you have any complaints about our service.
- 2 Don't hesitate to make a complaint if you are not satisfied with our product. N2L57
- 3 I received a complaint from a customer yesterday. N2L4
- 4 One customer got impatient and lodged a complaint. L5

/'traɪ.əmf/

triumph n.

- 1 an important victory or success after a difficult struggle (尤指 苦战后获得的) 胜利, 成功, 成就
- 2 a note of triumph 胜利者的调子
- 3 He spoke with a note of triumph.
- 4 She ended her speech with a note of triumph.
- 5 There was a note of triumph in his voice when he expressed his gratitude to teammates. N2L84

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/'æst.ərɪsk/

asterisk n.

- 1 a mark like a star (*), used especially to show something interesting or important 星号(*)
- 2 Please pay attention to the footnote with asterisks. N2L16
- 3 Put an asterisk beside the names of those who died of cancer. N2L77
- 4 The most important instructions are marked by asterisks.

/kən'dʌkt/

conduct v.

- 1 to take or lead someone somewhere 带领, 引导
- 2 conduct sb. to
- 3 The physics teacher conducted the students to the Lab.
- 4 The tour guide conducted us to the sacred temple. L3
- 5 The volunteers kindly conducted children to their seats.

- be punctual for
- condition sb. to (do) sth.
- sb. be conditioned to do sth.
- develop an unshakable belief/faith in
- have/lose faith in sb. /sth.
- blame sb./sth. for
- blame sth. on sb.
- consult the map/manual/ dictionary
- go/fly direct
- It is/seems odd that...
- reflect that....
- reflect on sth.
- lodge a complaint
- have/make/receive/lodge a complaint
- a note of triumph
- conduct sb. to

neither + 部分倒装

- Neither have I seen such a beautiful sunset before.
- Neither did she want to go to the party, nor did he.
- Neither will he lend you money, nor will I.

- Neither has he studied for the exam, nor has his friend.
- Neither did they enjoy the movie, nor did their parents.
- Neither can I understand his explanation, nor can my sister.

Neither can we ignore it.

A Quiet Passion (2016)

But neither will Mr. Scaramanga trust you if he hears about this interesting little conversation.

The Man with the Golden Gun (1974)

not... but 不是... 而是...

▪ **but:** used after

a negative to emphasize that it is the second part of the sentence that is true

- It's not the size of the house, but the warmth of the home that matters.
- The purpose of the program is not to help the employers but to provide work for young people.
- She is not just a student, but a future leader who inspires and motivates others.

What I could use right now is not a bobby but a really good cleaning lady.

The Imitation Game (2014)

37 Story+Expressions

- It is all too easy to do sth.
- sb. noted with satisfaction that...
- can't help doing...
- strike sb as...
- take advantage of
- wish to do
- hold up
- It dawned on me that ...
- roar down
- not... but
- hear of
- copy of...
- in black and white
- at the bottom of

It's all too easy to do...

- It's all too easy to make mistakes, however, beyond doubt, we can learn from them and grow. L35
- It's all too easy to be influenced by other people's opinions. L26
- It's all too easy to presume that someone is guilty without evidence. L36

sb. noted with satisfaction that...

- I noted with satisfaction that my article captured the attention of many young people. L31
- She noted with satisfaction that her joke made the audience laugh to tears. L29
- He noted with satisfaction that the travel agent would compensate him for his loss. L29

can't help doing

- to not be able to control or stop something: 忍不住做; 不禁做某事
- I can't help thinking about you.
- Mary can't help laughing when I told her the joke you shared with me last night. L19
- I can't help feeling sorry for him. N2L70

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

strike sb. as ... 给某人留下...印象

- You don't strike me as the kind of person who has bad taste in art. L26
- She strikes me as someone who might be a drama queen. L24
- He doesn't strike me as a man who is keen on reading science fiction. N2L20&L24

take advantage of

- to use a particular situation to do or get what you want 利用某物(做某事)
- I decided to take advantage of the discount and bought the laptop I always wanted. N2L22
- We planned to take advantage of good weather and go hiking this weekend. N2L38

wish to do

- Tom wishes to gain some height. N2L79
- He wishes to play truant from school. N2L73
- She wishes to stay out of the limelight. N2L74

hold up

- to delay or block the movement or progress of sth. /sb. 耽搁; 延误
- He noticed with dismay that an accident is holding up traffic. N2L86
- The secretary informed me that the project is held up by a murder. L5
- He was held up in a cave and starved to death. L12

It dawned on me that...

- if a fact dawns on you, you realize it for the first time 开始明白〔某个事实〕，醒悟
- It dawned on me that my dog was still tied to a tree. L16
- It dawned on me that it's safe to lie on the surface of the ice. N2L88
- It dawned on me that he was under a lot of pressure at that time. N2L84

not...but 不是...,而是

- It suddenly dawned on me that he was not a policeman but someone else.
- He is not an artist but just someone enjoys painting. N2L68
- I am amazed to find that it's not a problem, but an opportunity. L3

roar down

- if a vehicle roars somewhere, it moves very quickly and noisily〔车辆〕轰鸣着疾驶
- I saw a train roaring down the railway. N2L35
- I'm fairly confident that I heard the car roaring down the driveway. N2L55&N2L47

hear of

- I've never heard of that story. have/why/what
- He confirmed that he had already heard of the news. N2L87
- Are you suggesting that you've never heard of a book called Harry Potter? N2L87

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

copy of...

- one of many books, magazines, records etc that are all exactly the same〔书、杂志、唱片等的〕一份，一册，一张
- I need a copy of the newspaper.
- I found five copies of the same magazine on the self.
- He admitted stealing a copy of the album from the store. N2L46

in black and white

- 白纸黑字; 以书面形式 in writing or in print
- Now that the rule has been written in black and white, you have to obey it. L8
- I prefer to have our agreement in black and white. N2L50
- I was wondering if the result of the discussion will be provided in black and white. N2L68

at the bottom of

- The result of the survey will be presented at the bottom of the last page. N2L10
- He confirmed that the letters written at the bottom of the card is the password. N2L87
- It's fortunate that I finally found her name at the bottom of the list. N2L65

homework

1. 复习新概念第二册 语法 查阅教学视频视频中高级红皮书(开篇视频)
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
4. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
5. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ˈkælɪn.də/

calendar n.

- 1 I need to get rid of the old calendar. L28
- 2 My wife urged me to buy a new calendar. N2L78
- 3 I am curious to find out what happened behind the story of the first calendar. N2L79

/hɪˈstɔːriən/

historian n.

- 1 A historian is someone who studies ancient civilizations.
- 2 The historian claims to have found new information of the Roman Empire. N2L82
- 3 The historian is fanatical about the civilization of ancient China. N2L83

/juːˈniːk/

unique adj.

- 1 very special or unusual 极好的;难得的,不同寻常的;特别的
- 2 The job will offer you a unique opportunity to travel abroad. N2L78
- 3 in a unique position
- 4 Now you are in a unique position to provide us with valuable information. L5
- 5 We're in a unique position to make a study of our competitor's advantages and weaknesses. L9

/ˈstedɪli/

steadily adv.

- 1 continuing or developing gradually or without stopping, and not likely to change 持续地;稳定地;不断地
- 2 The company's profits have been steadily increasing over the past few years. N2L52
- 3 The evidence of the murder was steadily accumulated during the investigation.
- 4 Her confidence to make a speech in front of a large crowd steadily rises. N2L63

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈsəʊli/

solely adv.

- 1 not involving anything or anyone else; only 唯一地,仅仅,只
- 2 You shouldn't be solely responsible for what happened. N2L71
- 3 I am disappointed to learn that you blame that solely on me. N2L72 L37
- 4 Learning a new skill can't be based solely on taking classes. L9

/ˈvɪdiəʊ/

video n.

- 1 take a video
- 2 I am tempted to take a video of you dancing. L28
- 3 I can't help taking a video of you wearing that fancy dress. L37
- 4 I am impressed by the video you took on the wedding. L28

/rɒm/

CD-ROM n. 只读光盘

- 1 I need to return the CD-ROM to the shop owner. N2L45
- 2 I should have returned the CD-ROM I rented ten years ago. N2L65
- 3 The CD-ROM enabled me to have a glimpse of what happened on that day. L26 N2L42

/bɪ'wɪldə/

bewilder v.

■to confuse someone 使迷惑, 使迷茫
■bewildering: confusing, especially because there are too many choices or things happening at the same time 令人困惑的/眼花缭乱的

■a bewildering variety/amount/number of

■be/feel bewildered by... 感到困惑

1 She has a bewildering variety of clothes styles to choose from. N2L90

2 There are a bewildering number of apps in the App Store. N2L58

3 You can't blame me for feeling bewildered by the bewildering amount of information you sent me. L37

/dɪ'dʒu:s/

deduce v.

■to use the knowledge and information you have in order to understand something or form an opinion about it 推论, 推断, 演绎

■deduce that...推断出

■deduce from...从...推断

1 From her son's age, I deduced that her husband must be at least 60. N2L17

2 What can you deduce from that?

3 I can deduce that he has a large circle of friends. N2L63

4 From the look on your face, I can deduce that you made a spectacle of yourself. N2L96

/'skæ.n.ti/

scanty adj.

1 not enough 不足的, 不够的

2 scanty clue/evidence/information

3 We can't deduce the killer from the scanty clues we have.

4 It's naive to think that the scanty information will provide you with an answer. L36

5 No matter how hard she worked, she could only find scanty evidence. N2L68

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/klu:/

clue n.

■information that helps you understand the reasons why something happens (有助于弄清事情缘由的) 线索

■find/look for/follow/leave/ provide clues

1 My boss noted with satisfaction that I found the clues to solve the problem. L37 N2L64

2 I looked for clues at the entrance of the train station. N2L18&N2L93

3 It's odd that the thief would leave so many clues for us to follow. L37

4 I was frightened out of my wits by the clues he provided me. N2L90

/ɪn.sɪg'nɪfɪkənt/

insignificant adj.

■too small or unimportant to consider or worry about 微不足道的, 无足轻重的

1 The clue which was considered to be insignificant previously proved to be quite useful in the end. L17&N2L77

2 Pay attention to any details, no matter how insignificant they may seem at first sight. N2L16

3 Even the most insignificant clue can make a big difference in a case.

/ʃeɪd/

shed v.

■shed light on: to provide new information that makes a difficult subject or problem easier to understand 为...提供线索; 对...透露情况; 使...清楚地显出; 阐明...

1 A seemingly insignificant clue may shed light on the situation.

2 The new finding is likely to shed interesting light on the mysterious ancient Greek culture. L9

3 It's anticipated that the study will shed new light on the child abuse problem. L26

/ˈæd.vənt/

advent n.

■the time when something first begins to be widely used
某事物的出现[到来]

■the advent of...

■with the advent of computer/television/video chat...
随着...的到来

1 I can't help noticing that the advent of online shopping has a great influence on our society. L37&L26

2 Many people have made great profits with the advent of short videos. N2L80

3 The advent of video chat has made it possible for us to see and hear our friends and family through a phone. L26

/ˈægrɪkʌltʃə/

agriculture n. 农业; 农学

1 The gradual disappearance of nomad tribes stems from the advent of agriculture. L29

2 The advent of agriculture changed food production and allowed early human populations to grow and thrive. N2L10

3 Some people may doubt the wisdom of putting a great deal of money in developing agriculture. L27 N2L56

/əˈsʌmp.jən/

assumption n.

■something that you accept as true without question or proof 假定, 假设

■make the assumptions that+句子

■L9 be based on the assumption that +句子

■work on the assumption that + 句子

1 I made a unique assumption. did/why/what kind of

2 I think you are making the assumption that your design will come into fashion in a short time. L29

3 Are you suggesting that your happiness is solely based on the assumption that you will receive the prize money? N2L87 L16

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/dɒt/

dot n.

1 I am genuinely sorry that I got your new white jacket with black dots. L12

2 connect the dots: bringing together a lot of pieces of information from different places in order to show that something is true 将各种信息和线索联系在一起

3 After I connected the dots, I realized that something was odd during the wedding. N2L20

/ˈsɪm.bəl/

symbol n.

1 a sign, number, letter, etc. that has a fixed meaning, especially in science, mathematics and music

符号, 记号, 标记

2 He forgot to tell me about the meaning of the symbols on the notebook. L16

3 She denied drawing any symbols on the wall. L16

4 Her disappearance reminds me of the strange symbol I noticed on the wall. N2L16

/ɪnˈɡreɪv/

engrave v.

■to cut words or designs on metal, wood, glass etc [在金属、木头、玻璃等上] 雕刻 [文字或图案]

■engrave sth. on

■a. be engraved on b. a被雕刻在b上

1 I noticed that she was wearing a ring with her name engraved on it. N2L67

2 I turned the clay into a cup which I had her name engraved on. N2L66

3 You don't strike me as the kind of person who would be patient enough to engrave flowers on wood. L37

/aɪ.vəri/

ivory n.

- 1 Some people live by selling ivory products. L27
- 2 It's disturbing to think that plenty of elephants are killed for their ivory. L1
- 3 The new law prevented people from doing ivory tradings.
- 4 How would you comment on the ivory trading business? L36

/ˈmæməθ/

mammoth n.

- 1 an animal like a large hairy elephant that lived on Earth thousands of years ago 猛犸(象), 毛象
- 2 Mammoths were the biggest animal I've ever known on earth. N2L8
- 3 He pours scorn on my plan to study the history of mammoths. L36
- 4 Climate change and human activities conspired to cause the disappearance of mammoths. L36

/tʌsk/

tusk n.

- 1 [大象等动物的] 长牙, 獠牙
- 2 Some animals have tusks, such as elephants, whales and so on. L36
- 3 She let out a cry when she discovered the ivory tusks of an elephant in a cave. L13
- 4 It is estimated that the length of a mammoth tusk can reach 10 feet.

/ˈnəʊ.mæd/

nomad n.

- 1 游牧民, 游牧部落中的一员
- 2 It gives me the impression that the nomad tribe leads a mysterious life. L24&L9
- 3 There was a time when all humans were nomads. L14
- 4 The nomad loaded his truck with food and all kinds of tools. L12

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈkɒrɪleɪt/

correlate v.

■if two or more facts, ideas etc correlate or if you correlate them, they are closely connected to each other or one causes the other (使)相互关联

■be positively/negatively/ strongly correlated with...

- 1 It seems reasonable to assume that stress at work can be negatively correlated with job satisfaction. L36
- 2 Needless to say, a healthy diet and regular exercise are positively correlated with health. L36
- 3 The study suggests that sugar intake is strongly correlated with the risk of diabetes. L36

/f eɪ z /

phase n.

■〔月亮或行星的〕相, 相位

■the phase(s)of the moon

■any stage in a series of events or in a process of development: (发 展或变化的)阶段, 时期

- 1 To understand this, you need to take the phases of the moon into account. L17
- 2 Can you acquaint me with the information about the phase of the moon? L36
- 3 I am relieved to hear that she has gone through a difficult phase. N2L84

/f eɪ z /

phase n.

■〔月亮或行星的〕相, 相位

■the phase(s)of the moon

■any stage in a series of events or in a process of development: (发 展或变化的)阶段, 时期

- 1 To understand this, you need to take the phases of the moon into account. L17
- 2 Can you acquaint me with the information about the phase of the moon? L36
- 3 I am relieved to hear that she has gone through a difficult phase. N2L84

/ˈprɪmɪ.tɪv/

primitive adj.

1 belonging to a simple way of life that existed in the past and does not have modern industries and machines

原始的, 远古的

2 The finding of that cave might shed new light on the primitive society.

3 I invited him to explore a display of primitive art. L31

4 Primitive men lived by hunting and gathering. L27

/dɪˈpɪkt/

depict v.

■to describe something or someone in writing or speech, or to show them in a painting, picture etc 描写, 描述, 描绘
■depicted in/on/by...

1 Her paintings, depicted on the wall, show the life of primitive people.

2 The mysterious life of ancient Egyptians is depicted in the comic book, which has a universal appeal. L29 N2L77

3 It seems odd that the two paintings [depicted by different artists] bear strong resemblance. L37&L36

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- in a unique position
- take a video
- a bewildering variety/amount/number of
- be/feel bewildered by...
- deduce that...
- deduce from...
- find/look for/follow/leave/provide clues
- shed light on
- the advent of...
- with the advent of computer/television video chat
- make the assumptions that
- be based on the assumption that + 句子
- work on the assumption that + 句子
- connect the dots
- engrave sth. on
- a. be engraved on b.
- be positively/negatively/strongly correlated with...
- depicted in/on/by...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

38 Story+Expressions

- select from
- the great mass of
- rely on
- as it were
- see/hear...in action
- be faced with
- come into being
- be puzzled by
- be connected with
- the passage of time/days
- It has long been known that
- a form of
- be near to sth.
- It's possible that...
- there is a (definite) relation between... and

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

select ... from

- I am pleased with the films you selected from the list. N2L69
- The professor conducted me to the school library where I had different varieties of books to select from. L36
- She let her son select the Christmas gift from the unique list [she made for him].

the great mass of

- a large amount or quantity of something 大量
- mass of information/evidence/data
- The sad truth is that he found nothing useful from the great mass of information. L23
- Her tears indicated that she found nothing from the great mass of evidence. L28
- To his dismay, the great mass of data turned out to be useless. L23 L3

rely on

- I wish that I could rely on the great mass of evidence. L12
- It's truth that sometimes we can rely solely on ourselves. L16
- At least you can rely on your parents. L34

as it were

- used when describing someone or something in a way that is not quite exact 可以说; 在某种程度上;
- He's the captain of our team, so he's, as it were, our leader on the field.
- She painted a vivid picture of the forest, describing the trees as a sea of green, as it were. L17

in action

- see/hear...in action 亲眼看到/亲耳听到
- During the live concert, the audience was able to see the band in action. N2L43
- I can't conceal the excitement to see and hear the rare animals in action through the video. L34
- I mustered up courage to see the snake show in action. L34

be faced with

- Knowing that he might be faced with death made his hair stand on end. L24
- I console myself that although I am faced with many problems now, they will be solved one by one. L29
- All of a sudden, I am faced with hundreds of thousands of challenges. L33&L34

come into being

- to start to exist
形成;出现;诞生;开始存在;
- Evidence suggests that the universe came into being thousands of years ago. L36
- Neither did he come into being as a great leader overnight, but through years of hard work. L37 not...but... 不是...而是

be puzzled by

- I am puzzled by his resemblance to one of his classmates, who turned out to be his twin brother. L36&L3
- I would have finished the work much earlier if I hadn't been puzzled by the last step. N2L64
- If you are puzzled by any of the questions, feel free to consult your note and the textbook. L26&L37

be connected with

- connect: to realize or show that a fact, event, or person is related to something 与... 相连/联系
- I came to realize that magic power of the ring is connected with the words engraved on it. L14
- The detective made the remarkable discovery that the two events were in fact connected with each other. L14&L21

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

the passage of time/days 时间的流逝

- The patient's health gradually improved with the passage of days, giving hope to the doctors and family.
- The beauty of the changing seasons is best observed through the passage of days, as the leaves turn from green to red in the autumn.
- I am trying to be aware of the passage of time. L27

It has long been known that

- It has long been known that many Americans have developed an unshakable faith in God. L37
- It has long been known that we are conditioned to social conventions. L37
- It has long been known that mammoth has become extinct thousands of years ago.

a form of

- I am fully acquainted with the fact that swimming is a form of exercise. L36
- She went to great length to prove that being strict is a form of love. L28

be near to sth. 接近某事物/状态

- She was near to crying.
- He was near to panic as he rushed out of the building.
- He seemed to know that he was near to death. L27

It's possible that....

- It's possible that the puma is about to attack you. L34
- It's possible that you've made a real discovery. L34
- It's possible that this is just the prelude to an unforeseen series of catastrophes. L33

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

there is a (definite) relation between... and

- There is a relation between eating healthy food and feeling good.
- It suddenly dawned on me that there is a definite relation between his leaving and the past event. L37
- The idea that there is a definite relation between being kind to others and making friends is mistaken. L18

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....
Questions

.....
Homework



.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap

/ˈrʌʃl/

rough adj.

- 1 having an uneven surface (表面)粗糙的, 不平的, 崎岖不平的
- 2 The traffic police worked hard to get the traffic on the move despite the rough road conditions caused by heavy rainfall. L33 L3
- 3 Seeing the rough mountain path in front of me reduced me to tears. L33

/'bɔ:l.də/

boulder n.

- 1 a large round piece of rock 巨石, 巨砾
- 2 Falling down from the mountain, the boulder set up a chain of reactions. L33
- 3 It suddenly dawned on me that there was an old man standing beside that boulder on my way home. L37
- 4 I should have lodged a complaint to have the large boulder on the road removed. N2L65&L37&N2L66

/pɪt/

pit v.

- to put small marks or holes in the surface of something 使留下疤痕; 使有凹陷
 - be pitted with 有很多...坑洞, 布满坑洞
- 1 The old road started to be pitted with holes with the passage of time. L38
 - 2 The surface of the basketball court used to be smooth, but now it is pitted with cracks. N2L31
 - 3 The fact [that her face is pitted with scars] is strongly correlated with her past skin problems. L38

/pəˈtʃ:ə/

perturb v.

- worried about something that has happened or will happen 忧虑的, 不安的, 烦恼的
 - be/seem perturbed by
 - be/seem perturbed that+句子
- 1 She seems perturbed that she might not be able to connect the dots.L38
 - 2 Up to the time of my investigation, I discovered that the whole neighborhood was perturbed by the rising crimes. L31&N2L81
 - 3 It suddenly dawned on me that she seemed perturbed by the name of a man during the inquiry. L37

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˌʌndəˈes.tɪ.meɪt/

underestimate v.

- to think or guess that something is smaller, cheaper, easier etc than it really is (对...)估计不足, 低估, 看轻
 - underestimate how/what ...
 - underestimate the power of something
 - overestimate 反义词
- 1 I seem to have underestimated how difficult the task will be. L27
 - 2 Don't underestimated the power of a change which may look insignificant at first. L19
 - 3 It's possible that you might have overestimated the loss. L38&N2L19

/sɜ:v/

swerve v.

- (especially of a vehicle) to change direction suddenly, especially in order to avoid hitting somebody/something (通常为了避免碰撞)突然转向一边
 - swerve to avoid...
- 1 The driver [who was previously looking at his phone] swerved sharply to avoid driving into a tree. N2L68
 - 2 We can deduce that the driver swerved to avoid hitting the child [who suddenly ran into the street]. L38&N2L68

/sku:p/

scoop v.

- 1 to move something with a scoop or with something used as a scoop(用勺)舀;(用铲)铲, 捧起
- 2 scoop up 抱起, 拿起, 捧起
- 3 The children are eager to scoop up some ice cream and enjoy the afternoon. N2L57
- 4 When I took a long walk in the forest yesterday, I scooped up some fallen leaves. L19

/ˈhæmə/

hammer v.

1 to hit something many times, especially making a loud noise 反复敲打; 锤打; 猛击; 反复敲打

2 I found it hard to fall asleep last night, for the heavy rain was hammering the window all the time. L29

3 It seems reasonable to assume that she hammered at the door then because she was frightened. L36

/ˈɒmɪ.nəs.li/

ominously adv.

■making you feel that something bad is going to happen 恶兆地, 不祥地, 不吉利地

1 As he walk near the old house, he noticed the front door swinging ominously in the wind. L23

2 He was bewildered by the fact that the streets were ominously quiet. L38

3 As he walk in, he found the woman lying ominously on the floor. L1

/rɪp/

rip v.

■to tear something or be torn quickly and violently 撕, 扯; 被撕裂, 被扯开

■rip... off/up/out 撕掉, 撕碎

1 Are you making the assumption that she accidentally tore the paper while trying to rip it out of her notebook. L38

2 It is no use pretending that you are trying to rip off her picture. N2L68

3 It was the unexpected news that made him want to rip up the newspaper. N2L58

/ˈpetrəl/

petrol n. 汽油

1 Faced with an empty tank, we were relieved to find a petrol station just in time. L38

2 The clues [I found at the petrol station] might shed light on this matter. L38

3 She reprimanded me for stopping for petrol when we were in a hurry. L31

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/stretʃ/

stretch n.

■an area of land or water, especially one that is long and narrow [尤指狭长的] 一片地域, 一片水域, 一段路

■a stretch of road/river/land

1 We drove along a beautiful stretch of road that wound through the mountains.

2 We put up our camp along a stretch of the river, where the water flowed gently, and the view was incredible. N2L55

3 Driving along a stretch of road through the plains, we met a group of nomads. N2L49

/ˈɒb.stə.kəl/

obstacle n. 障碍, 阻碍, 妨碍

1 overcome obstacles 克服障碍

2 After overcoming all the obstacles, he made his way back. L36

3 There are many obstacles to overcome before one can sing with considerable ease. L27

4 To her dismay, she realized that overcoming the obstacles in front of her was going to be much harder than she had anticipated. L23

/klʌmp/

clump n.

■a group of trees, bushes, or other plants growing very close together [树、灌木或其他植物的] 丛, 簇, 群

■clumps of

1 I caught sight of the man who was hiding behind clumps of bushes. L2

2 The ancient ruins, surrounded by clumps of grass and trees, remain connected with the region's history. L38

3 The health of bird populations in the area is strongly correlated with the number of clumps of bushes and trees. L38

/ˈfɪʃə/

fissure n.

1 It is all too easy to underestimate the dangers of exploring deep fissures in the earth. L37

2 Having studied them for years, she is well acquainted with the fissures in the region. L36

3 It would be naive to believe that exploring a deep fissure has no significant risks. L36

/rɪˈnjuː/

renew v.

■更新;延长...的期限

■to begin doing something again after a period of not doing it (中止后)重新开始,继续

1 I need to renew my passport this year.

2 I'd like to renew these library books

3 He decided to renew his exercise routine after a long break.

4 The company plans to renew its marketing strategies for the new product. N2L38

/rɪˈnjuːd/

renewed adj.

■starting again, especially with increased interest or strength 再次发生的;再次兴起的

■renewed interest /confidence/ hope

1 After attending the workshop, she felt a renewed interest in painting.

2 The team's recent success has given them renewed confidence in their abilities.

3 The success stories of others who had overcome similar obstacles gave her renewed hope.

/ˈpliː.dɪŋ/

pleading n.

1 an act of asking for something that you want very much, in an emotional way 恳求,请求,央求

2 Her constant pleadings proved that she really wanted to go to the concert. L28

3 Despite her constant pleadings, Sarah couldn't convince her parents that she had to attend the concert on a school night. L1

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/gɪə/

gear n. 挡位, 排挡

1 go into a low/high gear

2 There was a note of triumph in his voice when he said had learned how to change gears in suitable situations. L37

3 The truck went into a low gear and roared down the mountain. L37

4 It seems that whether I go into a low or high gear doesn't make any difference. L29&L9

/əˈstraɪd/

astride prep.

1 跨坐地;跨(或骑)在...上;跨在...上

2 It made my mother laugh to tears when she saw the boy sitting astride a big dog and running around in the park. L29

3 She mustered up the courage to sit astride the horse. L34

4 I felt puzzled by his action of driving astride the deep fissure. L38

/kræk/

crack n.

1 The symbols depicted on the wall had been damaged by the water that went through a crack. L38

2 I noticed with dismay that there was a small crack in the ceiling. N2L86

3 The result is based on the assumption that the detectives can see them through a crack in the wall. L38

/ˈzɪɡ.zæɡ/

zigzag n.

1 Z字形, 之字形; 锯齿纹; course 路线, 航线

2 It's said that following a zigzag course would help save more energy when climbing up high stairs. N2L58

3 It's so odd that the man is walking in a zigzag pattern on the street. L37

4 I'll never forget the day when I saw you running happily in a zigzag course in the park. L14 N2L35

/'ʃæləʊ/

shallow adj.

1 We found scanty clues in the shallow soil. L38

2 The car attempted to drive through the shallow water but got stuck in the mud. L8&L35

3 The water is too shallow in the pond, which makes it impossible to swim here. L26

/graɪnd/

grind ground v. 磨碎

■if a vehicle grinds to a halt, it stops gradually (车辆)

■grind to a halt

■come to a grinding halt

1 As much as he wanted to arrive on time, he couldn't prevent the car from coming to a grinding halt. L26&N2L68&N2L87

2 If there had been oil in the engine, the car wouldn't have come to a grinding halt. N2L64

3 The overloaded truck had difficulty climbing up the mountain and ground to a halt halfway. N2L72

- be pitted with
- be/seem perturbed by
- be/seem perturbed that +句子
- underestimate how/what ...
- underestimate the power of something
- swerve to avoid
- scoop up

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/hɒlt/

halt n.

■a stop or pause 停止, 停住; 暂停

■bring...to a halt 使...停止

■come to a halt

■come to a stop... L6

1 The heavy fog brought the air travel to a halt. L4

2 Not only did the accident bring the traffic to a halt, but it also resulted in the death of two men. L5

3 The car came to a halt when the driver noticed the red light.

/'dæʃ.bɔ:d/

dashboard n. (汽车的) 仪表盘

1 The driver was conscious that the flashing light on the dashboard indicated a low level of petrol. L31

2 The man reprimanded his son for putting his feet on the dashboard. L31

3 I think there is a definite relation between the accident and the heavy package on the dashboard. L38

- rip... off/up/out
- a stretch of land/river/road
- overcome obstacles
- clumps of
- go into a low/high gear
- grind to a halt=come to a grinding halt
- bring... to a halt
- come to a halt

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

39 Grammar

it is not that ..., but (that)...
不是...而是...

- It is not that I don't want to go out tonight, but that I have a lot of work to do.
- It is not that I don't enjoy going to parties, but that I prefer spending time alone.
- It is not that I don't appreciate your help, but that I want to try it myself.

The meaning of the river flowing is not that all things are changing so that we cannot encounter them twice, but that some things stay the same only by changing.
Call Me by Your Name (2017)

I mean, it's not that he's unkind, but he never talks to me.
Sweet Country (2017)

It's not that I don't want to, it's that it's not a good time.
Please Stand By (2017)

simply

- simply: 简直, 根本, 就是 used to emphasize what you are saying
- He simply won't accept the my decision.
- You simply must see the play.
- He simply refused to believe it.

The guard simply didn't notice.
The Shawshank Redemption (1994)

39 Story+Expressions

- There was worse to come.
- get sb. to do
- not in the least
- it was not that...
- have a sense of
- sooner or later
- what a relief it was when
- give way to
- ahead of
- a shallow pool of
- charge at
- sb. announced that

get sb. to do

- You can get the salesman to engrave her name on the gift. L38
- We can deduce that he got someone to fix his car instead of doing it himself. L38
- She got the fire brigade to chip through a wall and saved the thief. L35

not in the least

- He was not in the least sorry for what he said and was bent on winning the argument. L34
- You don't seem to be in the least interested in geography, so why are you here for this meeting? L27
- The boy is not in the least afraid of ghost stories and begged his father to tell him more. L34

It was not that...

- It was not that I wanted to get rid of you. L28
- It is not that I dread going out alone at night. L29
- It was not that I liked to comment on people's wearing. L36

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

have a/no sense of

- After I found enough clues, I had a sense of achievement. L38
- Benefited from his sense of humor, Tom is popular with his students. L33&N2L94
- I have been accustomed to losing my way, as I had no sense of direction. N2L94

sooner or later

- Sooner or later, you will overcome the obstacles you find bewildering now.
- Sooner or later, you will get back to your family. L38
- Sooner or later, we will be able to settle the argument. N2L43 L21

what a relief it was when

- What a relief it was when I heard that you are cast in the role you wanted. L22
- What a relief it was when I succeeded in completing the marathon. N2L36
- What a relief it was when I found that the lost girl had been reunited with her family. L36

give way to 被...替代

- be replaced by something else
- It's anticipated that the trees will be removed to give way to the new road. L26
- When I reflected on what he had done, sadness gave way to anger. L37
- It's possible that trust will give way to doubt. L38

ahead of

■ I had a great mass of responsibilities ahead of me. L38

■ He noted with satisfaction that his team was ahead of their competitors. L37

■ ahead of time 提前

■ With careful planning and hard work, the team managed to bring the project to a conclusion ahead of time.

N2L67&L36

a shallow pool of

■ a pool of 一池.....; 一摊...; 一汪...

■ A guard found him lying in a pool of blood, and a doctor saved him. L1

■ After the rain, there was a shallow pool of water in the backyard.

was/when/why/what/where...

■ The hotel manager claimed to have solved the problem, but there was still a pool of water in my room. L1

习惯

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

用法

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

造句

方式/地点/时间

6123456

指南

其他习惯用法

结合学过的语法

charge at

■ to deliberately run or walk somewhere quickly

■ After consulting the map, he confidently charged at the shallow water to reach the mountain some distance ahead of him. L37

■ He charged at the meeting room, determined to be punctual for the important presentation. L37

■ She charged at the customer service desk, ready to blame the delayed flight on the airline staff. L37

sb. announced that....

■ He announced that their advanced security system would keep the city free from crime. L34

■ The teacher announced that punishments would be meted out to students who broke the school rules. L35

■ He announced that volunteers would attend to the elderly during the heatwave. L33

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段,直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/həʊks/

hoax n.

■an attempt to make people believe something that is not true 恶作剧, 骗局...

■victim of a hoax/make a hoax call

1 The police who was armed with a gun turned out to be the victim of a hoax. L2&L3

2 There is no doubt that he made a hoax call to his mother. L25

3 Despite the fact that the man made a hoax call to his girlfriend, their wedding was still a success. L3

/dɪ'sep.ʃən/

deception n.

■the act of deliberately making someone believe something that is not true 欺骗, 骗局, 诡计

■a form/kind of deception

■obtain money....by deception

1 How can you be tolerant of this kind of deliberate deception? L11

2 It suddenly dawned on me that this might be a form of deception. L37

3 From the evidence we have now, we can certainly deduce that he obtained that large sum of money by deception. L14&L38

/rɪ'spekt/

self-respecting adj.

有自尊心的

1 no/every/any/most self-respecting +n. should/would

2 Every self-respecting teacher should be willing to accept criticism. L4&N2L70

3 Any self-respecting lawyer would take their job seriously. L1

4 No self-respecting student would attempt to obtain money by deception. L8

/ɪn'dʌldʒ/

indulge v.

■to allow yourself or another person to have something enjoyable, especially more than is good for you

沉溺于, 使沉迷

■indulge in...

1 What a relief it was when I found that he had stopped indulging in sweet food. L39

2 Now you are in a unique position to persuade him not to indulge in short videos. L38&N2L54

3 It was not that you can never indulge in shopping. L39

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/nju:'mætɪk/

/drɪl/

pneumatic adj. drill n.

1 气动的钻;风钻

2 I felt frightened by the man who carried a pneumatic drill. N2L79

3 It seems that this pneumatic drill is broken. L9

4 There are a bewildering variety of pneumatic drills in the shop. L38

/'sɪli/

silly adj.

1 It is silly to do.../it's silly of me to do. /it's silly for sb. to do.

2 It's silly of me to blame that on you. L37

3 It's silly to go back to work now. L28

4 It is silly of me to wear that suit to the fancy dress party. L13

/əd'vɑ:ns/

advance adj.

■happening, done, or ready before an event 预先的, 事先的

■advance information/planning/ warning /booking/ reservations/ training/notice

1 I am astonished to discover that advance bookings for the concert start today. N2L81&L16

2 They were amazed to find that he provided the writers with advance information. L3&L5

3 Despite the advance warning, the flood still destroyed the drainage system. L4&L3

/'ɑ:tʃ.weɪ/

archway n.

1 You seem perturbed that he is gazing at the sacred temple which has an ancient archway. L39&N2L52

2 I recognized the man who was fanatical about ancient archways. N2L83

3 I saw a boy who was charging at the archway. L39

/ˈremən.streɪt/

remonstrate v.

■to protest or complain about sb./ sth 抗议, 抱怨, 埋怨.
■remonstrate with sb. (about sth.)
■remonstrate against sth. 抗议...
1 The producers who remonstrated against the new rules were put out of business. L14
2 So you are making the assumption that as the employees learned about the sudden changes in company policies, they gathered to remonstrate with the management. L38
3 Rolling up her sleeves, she remonstrated with her husband about the decision. L15

/aɪˈrɒnɪ.kəli/

ironically adv. 讽刺的

1 Ironically, she managed to connect the dots. N2L67&38
2 Ironically, the team's efforts to speed up the project were negatively correlated with the number of mistakes they made. N2L56&L38
3 Ironically, the man takes his job seriously. L1

/pəˈmɪʃən/

permission n.

■if you have permission to do something, you are officially allowed to do it 允许, 许可
■ask (for)/need/give permission
1 If you had asked (for) permission from the owner, we wouldn't have been arrested. N2L64
2 Everybody needs permission to fish here, so don't think you're gonna be the exception to the rule. L27
3 I had to give permission to my neighbor to use my parking space, and we put it in black and white to avoid any misunderstandings. L37

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/grɑ:nt/

grant v.

■to give or allow someone something, usually in an official way (通常指官方)同意, 准予, 授予
■be granted permission to do...
■take sth. for granted 认为... 是理所当然的
1 No wonder he was granted permission to buy a new house. L25
2 The bright smile on his face indicated that he had been granted permission to visit the palace. L28&N2L34
3 The girl was apologetic for always taking her parents' love for granted. L31

- victim of a hoax
- make a hoax call
- a form/kind of deception
- obtain money....by deception
- It is silly to do ...
- It's silly of sb. to do
- It's silly for sb. to do
- indulge in...
- advance information/planning/warning/booking/reservations/training/notice
- remonstrate with sb.(about sth.)
- remonstrate against sth. 抗议...
- ask (for)/need/give permission
- be granted permission to do
- take...for granted

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

be to do 的用法：
禁止；不必 + 更多含义

- The students were not to leave the classroom until the bell rang.
- The employees were not to use the company's equipment for personal use.
- Visitors were not to take photographs inside the museum.
- The children were not to play near the construction site for safety reasons.

▪ I made myself extraordinarily clear that you were not to go on camera.

Money Monster (2016)

▪ Mr. Mayer said very specifically you were not to eat the food.
Judy (2019)

please v.

(常用在as或what, where等词后) 想, 选择, 喜欢;使满意;使愉快;
to indicate that someone can do or have whatever they want.

▪ You come and go as you please, like a cat.

Jack Irish: Dead Point (2014)

▪ It must feel pretty good...being able to come and go as you please.

Stuck on You (2003)

40 Story+Expressions

- It has never been explained why...
- practical jokes
- specialize in
- no self-respecting ... would do...
- be funny to
- tear up
- sb. added that
- be grateful (to sb.) for sth.
- do...by force
- stop doing
- sth. would hardly be necessary as...
- be under arrest
- put sb. under arrest
- pretend to do
- make a telephone call
- Only when... did sb. realize that +句子

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

It has never been explained why...

- It has never been explained why he was given a state funeral. L14
- Despite numerous inquiries, it has never been explained why the project was suddenly canceled. L3
- It has never been explained why they were keeping track of the ballon. N2L91

practical jokes

- a trick that is intended to give someone a surprise or shock, or to make them look stupid 恶作剧
- He has been accustomed to being the victim of practical jokes. has/why... N2L94
- It has long been known that some practical jokes are popular with university students. L38&N2L94
- It's possible that you might have underestimated the power of some practical jokes. L38&&N2L19&L39

specialize in sth.

- Sheldon specializes in pestering people to do whatever he wants. L29
- Her success is associated with specializing in writing detectives stories. L35
- You are supposed to specialize in medicine. L30

no self-respecting... would do...

- 任何有自尊心的人都不会做
- No self-respecting student would cheat on an exam to achieve better grades..
- No self-respecting journalist would ever work for that newspaper. N2L4
- No self-respecting artist would copy someone else's artwork.

be funny to sb.

- Whether it's funny to me or not makes no difference. L29
- It looks as if it's funny to him. L20
- Are you suggesting that this practical joke should have been funny to everyone? N2L87&N2L65

tear up

- to remove something from the ground by pulling or pushing it violently 撕开; 扯破; 扯坏; 摧毁, 拆毁, 毁坏
- It's unacceptable to see the man tearing up my house. L36
- The workers threatened to tear up the whole street. N2L62
- The police blamed him for trying to tear up the town. L37

sb. added that...

- He added that practice is necessary for conditioning someone to perform well in sports. L37
- He added that the suggestion might strike her as surprising but was worth considering. L37&N2L66
- He added that he had to live by fishing. L27

be grateful (to sb.) for sth.

- Everyone was grateful for the contribution you made to our town. N2L85
- I am forever grateful for the encouragement you have given me. N2L85
- I am grateful for the support of my friends and family, as their encouragement helped me overcome obstacles during challenging times. L39

do (remove/take/drag...) ...by force

- I am relieved to hear that you didn't take that money by force. N2L84
- The trace on the floor proved that the furniture was removed by force. N2L94
- It's disturbing to think that some children were dragged into strangers' cars by force. L1

stop doing...

- Stop spying on him. L25
- He stopped begging his mother to give him more pocket money. L34
- Punishments are often meted out to those who don't stop doing illegal activities. L35

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

sth. would hardly be necessary as...

- Taking a shower now would hardly be necessary as we are going swimming. L3
- Keeping a secret would hardly be necessary as I already know the truth. L4
- Making scrambled eggs would hardly be necessary as I already had breakfast. L6

under arrest/put sb. under arrest

- The man who planted a bomb near the station was under arrest. N2L79
- The police informed them that they were under arrest. N2L85
- The thief who ripped off car parts in the middle of the night was now put under arrest for theft. L39

pretend to do

- She had no intention of pretending to sleep. L28
- He pretended to leap out at me. L24
- There is no doubt that he was just pretending to cry. L25

make a telephone call

- It's no use pretending to make a telephone call now. N2L68
- He can't conceal the fact that he wanted to make a telephone call. L28
- It became impossible to make a telephone call in the basement at that time. L25

Only when... did sb. realize that+句子

- Only when she saw the final grades did she realize that she had passed the exam.
- Only when they arrived at the party did they realize that it was a surprise for them.
- Only when she lost her job did she realize that she had been taking her financial stability for granted.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....
Questions

.....
Homework



.....
Summary & Recap
.....

/ɪˈluːʒən/

illusion n.

■an idea or opinion that is wrong, especially about yourself
错误的观念;幻想;错觉

■under the illusion that+句子 有...的错觉

- 1 We need to accept the fact that people bought these houses under the illusion that their value would just keep on rising. L36 N2L79
- 2 Needless to say, she was under the illusion that he was honest until he was caught stealing some money. L36
- 3 It's possible that she's under the illusion that she'll get the job. L38

/ˈpɑːstərəl/

/ɪˈdɪlɪk/

pastoral adj. idyllic adj.

田园的

田园诗般的

- 1 The painting depicts an idyllic pastoral scene of shepherds watching over their sheep.
- 2 We can make the assumptions that an idyllic pastoral life involves fresh air and the beauty of nature. L38
- 3 The painter captured idyllic pastoral life in a masterpiece, depicting a stretch of land with a small house among the hills. L39

/brɪːd/ /bred/

breed - bred v.

■if a place, situation, or thing breeds a particular type of person, it produces that type
养育, 哺育, 生养 (某一类型的人)

■born and bred: born and having grown up in a particular place and having the typical qualities of someone from that place 土生土长

- 1 It has never been explained why they were born and bred in another country. L40
- 2 There is a chance in a million that they were actually born and bred in the same environment. L36
- 3 Evidence suggests that he was born and bred in London. L36

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈræptʃə/

rapture n.

- 1 go into raptures 狂喜
- 2 She went into raptures about the climate, the food and the spring flowers when taking a stroll in the pastoral countryside. L23
- 3 After overcoming all sorts of obstacles, she went into raptures at the news of her success. L39 N2L63

/ɪkˈstəʊl/

extol v.

■to praise something very much 赞美, 颂扬

■extol the virtues/benefits of something

- 1 Educators should extol the virtues of making mistakes and encourage children to try more. L35
- 2 It has long been known that doctors extol the virtues of eating less fat. L38
- 3 In the speech, he extolled the benefits of filling cities with trees. L28

/suːˈpiəriə/

superior adj.

■better, more powerful, more effective etc than a similar person or thing, especially one that you are competing against 更好的;更强的;更有效的, 优越的

■be superior to ... 优于;胜于

- 1 He explained that he is indeed rich, since his income is superior to his expenses, and his expense is equal to his wishes. L19&L2
- 2 A closed mind is when you believe that your way of making a profit is superior to everyone else's. N2L80
- 3 The manager pointed out that his products were far superior to others. N2L58

/ˈkɒk.krəʊ/

cockcrow n.

▪ the time in the early morning when the sun rises

黎明, 鸡鸣时分

▪ the sound of a cock (=a male chicken) crowing

(= making a sound): 鸡叫

1 I was woken up with a start by the sudden cockcrow. L2

2 As soon as they heard the first cockcrow, they quickly got back to the box as if they had never left. L28

3 I am accustomed to getting up as soon as I hear the first cockcrow. N2L94

/ˈtwɪtə/

twitter v.

1 if a bird twitters, it makes a lot of short high sounds

(鸟) 鸣啾, 啾啾叫, 吱吱叫

2 It has never been explained why these birds twitter every morning in the trees near my house L40

3 Birds twitter outside the open window as she starts to depict pictures on the wall. L38

4 In the video, which was taken by investigators in the spring, birds twitter. N2L77

/glɪnt/

glint v.

▪ if a shiny surface glints, it gives out small flashes of light

闪烁, 闪光

1 What a relief it was when we found his gold ring which was glinting in the sunlight. L39

2 I found it hard to tell who he was because of the sun glinting on his glasses. L29

3 It was not until she saw something glinting on the carpet that she realized the diamond wasn't lost. N2L35 L21

/ˈpɑːstʃə/

pasture n.

▪ land or a field that is covered with grass and is used for cattle, sheep etc to feed on 牧场

1 He was anxious to take the horses out to the pasture. L22

2 With the passage of time, the deserted village became surrounded by fields and pasture land. L38

3 It seems that this pasture can no longer carry such a large number of cattle and sheep. L9&L18

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈvɜːtʃuəli/

virtually adv.

1 almost 实际上, 几乎, 差不多

2 Virtually everyone knows that great minds think alike. L21

3 It's virtually impossible to...

4 It's virtually impossible to get advance information without any efforts. L40

5 It's virtually impossible to be exempted from military service when going to high school. L11

/ˈdjuː.biəs/

dubious adj.

be dubious about

1 probably not honest, true, right etc 可疑的, 靠不住的

2 I am a little dubious about what he said of being granted permission to the temple. L40

3 I hope you don't mind the interference, but he has been associated with some dubious characters. L35&L23

4 I presume that the results of this policy will remain dubious for some time. L36

/ˈprɪvɪlɪdʒ/

privilege n.

▪ special advantage that is given only to one person or group of people 特权, 特殊待遇

▪ the privilege of doing something have the privilege of doing sth. L4

1 He announced that he had been given the privilege of meeting the queen. L39

2 From the look on her face, I can deduce that she hopes to have the privilege of working with them again. L38

3 They are naive enough to believe that they will be granted the privilege of coming to the palace again. L36

/ˈmɪzəri/

misery n.

1 great suffering that is caused for example by being very poor or very sick 痛苦, 困苦, 苦难
2 You don't strike me as the kind of person who lived in misery for years. L37

3 She is not in the least grateful for your help, as all that money brought nothing but sadness and misery. L39&L40

4 Everything conspired to make her life a misery. L36

/əˈkweɪn.təns/

acquaintance n.

■**Someone who is not a close friend**

相识的人, 泛泛之交, 熟人

■**make somebody's acquaintance:meet someone for the first time** 结识某人, 认识某人

1 She noted with satisfaction that he is only an acquaintance of her family. L36

2 After seeing the way Mr. Wyatt behaved at the party, I had little desire to make his acquaintance.

3 I am delighted to make your acquaintance. L23

/tri:t/

treat n.

1 **as a special treat...**作为一种特殊的款待

2 You could indulge in your favorite TV shows as a special treat. L40

3 We took the kids to the zoo as a special treat. did/who/why/where/when...

4 Emily, as a special treat, was granted permission to stay over at a school-friend's. L40

/ˈdwelə/

dweller n.

1 **a person or animal that lives in a particular place**

居住在城里/ 镇上/洞穴中等的人[动物]

2 He poured scorn on idea that both city and town dwellers should pay the same tax. L36

3 There is no doubt that city dwellers have a higher death rate than country people do. L25

4 He pretended to be an urban dweller. L40

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈstæɡə/

stagger v.

1 **to walk or move unsteadily, almost falling over**

蹒跚; 摇摇晃晃地走

2 He staggered home with great difficulty. L25

3 After he was attacked, he managed to stagger to the phone and call for help. N2L67

4 However painful it was, I managed to stagger the last few steps. L35

/ɪɡˈzɒtɪk/

exotic adj.

■**something that is exotic seems unusual and interesting because it is related to a foreign country - use this to show approval** 异国风情的, 外国情调的 [含褒义]

1 She dreamed of flying to an exotic place. N2L38

2 She seems perturbed by the exotic clothes on the floor. L39

3 His ideas shed light on why exotic foods are available in supermarkets. L38

4 He obtained the money to go on all these exotic journeys by deception. L40

/ɡləʊ/

glow n.

1 **a soft steady light** 光亮;光辉

2 With the glow from the lamp, it's easy to read the words engraved on the wall. L38

3 Only when the lamplight gave a warm glow to the room did he realized that +句子 L40

4 The candles shed a soft glow on her face, which captured the attention of all the men in the room. L26

/ dɪˈsɛnd /

descend v.

▪ if darkness, silence, a feeling etc descends, it becomes dark etc or you start to feel something, especially suddenly (黑暗、寂静等突然) 降临; (感情等突然) 袭来, 来临

▪ descend on/upon/over

1 After she tore up the letter, total silence descended on the room... L40

2 Something frightening was about to descend on him. L24

3 I can't help noticing that as he entered, a silence descended over the gathered audience. L37

/ tʌk /

tuck v.

▪ if someone or something is tucked away, they are hidden or difficult to find 躲藏, 隐藏; 被收藏

▪ be tucked away...

1 A sum of money was always tucked away in case there was an emergency. N2L74

2 It looked as if there were thousands of pounds tucked away in another saving account. L20

3 In the dim light, I discovered a box which had been tucked away in an odd corner of the house. L22

/ ˈɒbstɪnɪtli /

obstinately adv.

▪ determined not to change your ideas, behaviour, opinions etc, even when other people think you are being unreasonable 固执的, 顽固的, 倔强的

1 He obstinately refused to apologize to his sister. L16

2 He obstinately denied that he had stolen anything. L16

3 He obstinately thrust a pile of money into her hands. L28

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- under the illusion that+句子
- born and bred
- go into raptures
- extol the virtues/benefits of something
- be superior to ...
- It's virtually impossible to...
- be dubious about
- the privilege of doing something
- make somebody's acquaintance
- as a special treat ...
- descend on/upon/over
- be tucked away...

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复(置顶留言)

复合形容词

1. 名词+过去分词 a self-taught musician
2. 名词+现在分词 a time-consuming project

be always/forever老是/总是 doing sth. L2

He never does his homework on time and is forever getting into trouble at school.

save v. 省去(诸多不便;痛苦;悲惨;穷困)

- If you lent me £5, it would save me a trip to the bank. [save sb. sth.]
- If you phone for an appointment, it'll save you waiting. [save sb. doing sth.]
- I'll get a taxi from the station to save you the trouble of coming to collect me. [save sb. the trouble/bother (of doing sth.)]

定语从句:用that引导, 不用which/who

- 【考试VS日常生活】被定从修饰的词前有adj.est, [first, last, any, only few, little, much, no, some, very].
- This is the best TV set that is made in China.
- It is the fastest sports car that has ever been made.
- He is the smartest person that I know.

something comforting:adj. 后置

- something/somebody/anything/anybody
- There is nothing wrong with the watch.
- There's someone interesting at the party.
- Do you have something delicious to eat?
- Is there anybody available to answer the phone?

Nor 句首 + 倒装

- Nor have I seen him since that day.
- Nor did she want to go to the party.
- Nor did they have any idea how to solve the problem.
- Nor should you underestimate the importance of this decision.

41 Story+Expressions

- at the mere mention of
- be compared with
- be prepared to
- tolerate for
- beyond me
- do without
- travel miles to do sth.
- be available for
- come up to
- draw to a close
- make do with
- run wild
- few things could be more impressive than...
- it has always been a mystery to me why...

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

at the mere mention of

- At the mere mention of the haunted house, my daughter leapt out at me. L24
- His face turned red at the mere mention of the embarrassing practical jokes he experienced last year. L40
- At the mere mention of the girl's name, he got angry and charged at the shallow pool of water. L39

be compared with

- I am under the impression that her talent in painting cannot be easily compared with others. L32
- Whether you agree or not, the idyllic pastoral scene can hardly be compared with anything else. L29

be prepared to

- You have to be prepared to take a risk in this kind of work. N2L44
- Neither side seems to be prepared to get the traffic on the move. L27&L33
- You have to be prepared to start at the bottom of your life and work your way up. L34

tolerate... for

- It is naive to believe she can tolerate criticism for the benefit of personal growth. L36
- I suspect that he won't be able to tolerate long hours of work for the dubious benefit of achieving his career goals. L30
- It seems highly improbable that they can tolerate inconvenience for the privilege of living in a big house. L36

beyond me

- not something that I can understand
- It's beyond me why he made a horrible hoax call to his girlfriend on the wedding day. L40
- It's beyond me why you failed to connect the dots. N2L16 L38
- Why he seemed perturbed by the name was beyond me. L39
- How she got large sums of money was beyond me. L14

do without

- **to live or do something without a particular thing**
没有...也能应付 没有.....也行
- We ran out of milk, but we can do without it until we go grocery shopping.
- It is clear that she cannot do without a computer while working. L21
- During the camping trip, we realized we could do without electricity and still have a great time.

travel miles to do sth.

- My mother reprimanded me for traveling miles just to eat a bowl of dumplings. L31
- We were willing to travel miles to see the breathtaking sunset at the beach. L4
- The mere fact [that she would travel miles to visit you during the holidays] means she likes you. L34

be available for

- Unable to find his preferred ingredients, the chef had to make do with what was available for the dinner. L35
- I was wondering if there a room available for you tonight. N2L68
- There is a considerable number of books available for you to choose from. L19

come up to

- **come up to somewhere: to come from one place to another, especially from the south of a country to the north or from a smaller place to a larger one.**
- **come up to someone: to move towards someone**
- He came up to the front of the meeting room and presented the contract in black and white. L37
- It's true that he came up to the house that evening, armed with a music box and a pot of tea. L16 N2L55
- She came up to me and acquainted me with what truly happened that night. L36

draw to a close

- The festival drew to a close with the fantastic fireworks that lit up the night sky. L11
- What invariably happens is that as the semester drew to a close, students began making great efforts to prepare for their final exams. L33 N2L78

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

make do with

■ **to use what is available although it is not enough or what you wanted**

- She had to make do with the old computer.
- We ran out of milk, so we had to make do with black coffee for breakfast. N2L88
- As the accident brought the traffic to a grinding halt, I had to make do with the subway. L39

run wild

■ **If someone, often a child, runs wild, that person behaves as they want to without being controlled by anyone.**

失控, 天马行空, 随心所欲

- After being kept in the house all day, the children were allowed to run wild in the backyard. N2L10
- The imagination of the author seemed to run wild, creating fascinating worlds in each novel. L27
- They insist that all parents not let their children run wild. L22

Few things could be more impressive than....

- Few things could be more impressive than seeing the mountain view while the curtain goes up. L22
- Few things could be more impressive than the beauty of the ocean that consists of a bewildering variety of sea life. L13 N2L90

It has always been a mystery to me why..

■It has always been a mystery to me why they choose to embark on the arduous journey of starting their own business. L35

■It has always been a mystery to me why some people develop an unshakable belief in superstitions. L37

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 复习新概念第二册 语法 查阅教学视频 查中级红皮书
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 内化单词+语法+习惯用法 听力+口语+写作练习
3. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
4. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
5. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/keɪvmæn/

caveman

■(数千年前的)穴居人 someone who lived in a cave many thousands of years ago

■a man who is rude or violent, and has old-fashioned ideas 蛮的人; 粗的人

- ① The caveman had to make do with primitive tools to hunt for food. L41
- ② Don't be such a caveman! Use a napkin instead of wiping your hands on your pants.
- ③ The recent discovery shed light on the daily activities of cavemen. L38

/pɒt/ 'həʊlɪŋ/

pot-holing n.

- ① With the advent of modern equipment, pot-holing has become a safer adventure sport. L38
- ② The team celebrated their successful pot-holing with a note of triumph. L37
- ③ It is incredible how the human body can adapt to the challenging conditions of pot-holing. L36

/sɒlɪtju:d/

solitude n.

- ① The solitude of a quiet forest can be a catastrophe for someone accustomed to city life. L33
- ② It provides one with a chance to reflect on spiritual matters in solitude. L5&L37
- ③ Nothing can be compared with the moments of solitude before the pressures of the day began.

/lʊə/

lure v.

- ① The possibility of success can often lure people into taking risks they might avoid. N2L44
- ② He attempted to lure her away from her husband and family. L8
- ③ What invariably happens is that short videos can easily lure adults away from their daily routine.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/pɒt/ 'həʊlə/

pot-holer n.

- ① The experienced pot-holer took advantage of his advanced climbing skills to explore deeper into the cave. L37
- ② What became of the missing pot-holer was a mystery until he finally emerged from a hidden cave. L36&L35
- ③ The pot-holers consulted the map to ensure they were on the right path. L37

/'ræm.blə/

rambler n.

■someone who goes for walks in the countryside for pleasure [在乡间的] 闲逛者, 漫步者

- ① As a passionate rambler, she spent her weekends hiking through the mountains. N2L59
- ② At the mere mention of a fantastic new destination, the rambler went into raptures. L41
- ③ Today the railway attracts many tourists to the area, and is very popular with rambles. N2L94

/ʌn.də'teɪ.kɪŋ/

undertaking n.

■an important job, piece of work, or activity that you are responsible for [要的] 任务; 事业

- ① She is conscious that starting a new business can be a risky undertaking. L31
- ② It suddenly dawned on me that it might be a more difficult undertaking than it appears at first sight. L37
- ③ It is anticipated that the trip across country was a dangerous undertaking. L26

/ˈfɔː.s aɪt/

foresight n.

■the ability to imagine what is likely to happen and to consider this when planning for the future
先见之明，远见；深谋远虑

■have the foresight to do

- ① He had the foresight to swerve to avoid the accident. L39
- ② It has always been a mystery to me why they had the foresight to invest in the new technology. L41
- ③ If you had had more foresight to change direction, you would have saved yourself a lot of misery and expense. N2L64

/fɔːˈtɛl//fɔːˈtɔʊld/

foretell foretold

■to say what will happen in the future, especially by using special magical powers [尤指用超凡的能力] 预言

- ① I have developed an unshakable belief in the idea that nobody could foretell the future. L37
- ② The ancient prophecy foretold the rise of a great leader who would bring about the downfall of previous cruel ruler. L36
- ③ The mere fact [that the fortune teller foretold a promotion in his future] gave him hope and motivation to work harder. L34

/grəˈnɔʊbəl/

Grenoble n.

- ① 格勒诺布尔

/kæzəm/

chasm n.

■a very deep space between two areas of rock or ice, especially one that is dangerous
[尤指危险的] 裂隙，深坑，深渊

- ① To be reunited with the team, the hiker knew he had to be prepared to cross the chasm that lay ahead. L36
- ② What a relief it was when the rescue team arrived just in time to save the climbers from falling into the chasm. L39
- ③ The children went into raptures as they watched the hiker fearlessly cross the chasm. L42

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/flɔː/

flaw n.

■a break, scratch, crack, etc. that spoils something 小裂缝...

- ① The expert immediately noticed a small flaw in the antique vase and noted with satisfaction that it would increase its value. L37
- ② It is odd that the new car had a flaw in its paintwork, but the company promised that it would be fixed. L37

/dɪˈstɪŋɡwɪft/

distinguished adj.

■successful, respected, and admired 杰出的; 著名的; 卓越的

- ① The distinguished professor conducted the new student to the library. L37
- ② She described to me what the distinguished visitor looked like. L34
- ③ He seems to have a fascination for distinguished philosopher. L34
- ④ He asked me to keep an eye on the distinguished guests. L33

/ˈevərɪst/

Everest n.

- ① 珠穆朗玛峰

/weɪd/

wade v.

■to walk through water that is not deep 蹚(水), 涉水

■wade through/across 蹚过

- ① There was a note of triumph in his voice when he said he had managed to wade across the stream. L37 N2L67
- ② Have you heard of anyone who was able to wade through this kind of deep mud? L37 N2L43
- ③ There was a chance that he failed to wade through the river and died at last. L36 N2L16

/ˈwɔːtəfɔːl/

waterfall n.

- ① The mere fact [that the waterfall is surrounded by sweet-smelling trees] attracted me to travel miles to get there. L34&L41
- ② You could only go on foot to reach the hidden waterfall. L31
- ③ Nobody could account for the fact that the waterfall mysteriously disappeared overnight. N2L46

/gɪə/

gear n.

- ① a set of equipment or tools you need for a particular activity [用于某种活动的] 一套设备[工具]
- ② Could/Can you do me a favor and lend me your camping gear? L28
- ③ He described to me how he picked up the precious hunting gear. L34
- ④ The fact [that I had left all the gear at Dave's house] almost reduce me to tears. L33

/ɪnfləɪ.tə.bəl/

inflatable adj.

■an inflatable object has to be filled with air before you can use it (需)充气的

- ① He loaded the inflatable rubber dinghy with all their gear. L12
- ② Why the inflatable rubber boat is suddenly broken is beyond me. L41
- ③ The children go into raptures whenever they see an inflatable castle. L41 L14

/rʌbəl/

rubble n.

■ [被毁的建筑物或墙壁的] 碎石, 碎砖, 瓦砾
 ■reduce sth. to rubble/ruins: to cause something, especially a large structure, to be destroyed and broken into pieces

- ① I am astonished to find that the house was reduced to a pile of rubble. L16
- ② The sad truth is that an earthquake reduced the city to rubble. L23
- ③ It took them three hours to dig him out of the rubble. N2L50
- ④ She cherishes the hope that her parents will be dug out of the rubble alive. L34

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ɪn.sɪs.tənt/

insistent adj.

- ① 反复的;再三的;持续不断的;
- ② Oddly enough, there was an insistent knock on my door at midnight yesterday. L18
- ③ Little is known about the insistent drum sound on the street that night. L17
- ④ The insistent noise should be taken into account. L17

/bʊ:m/

boom v.

■to make a loud deep sound 发出低沉的声音, 隆隆作响

- ① The insistent booming sound is familiar to me. L18
- ② The Hotel manager explained that the insistent booming sound was from the river outside of the window. L19
- ③ I had the impulse to find out where the booming sound was from. L23

/wɔː.tə.spɑʊt/

waterspout n.

■a tall stream of water that the wind pulls up from the sea during a violent storm [由风暴引起的] 水龙卷, 海龙卷

- ① She is amazed to find that a series of white waterspouts soon rose in the harbor. L3&L33
- ② He presumed that the booming sound was from a waterspout in the cave. L36
- ③ I couldn't believe my eyes when a waterspout formed right in front of us during the storm.

/kleft/

cleft n.

- ① (自然的)裂口, 裂缝;
- ② They could only rely on themselves to walk through the cleft in the hills. L38
- ③ It strikes me as odd that eagles often nest in a cleft in the rocks. L37
- ④ They seemed perturbed by the cleft ahead of them. L39

/kævən/

cavern n.

- ① Few things could be more impressive than the ancient cave paintings depicted on the walls of a hidden cavern. L41&L38
- ② Explorers rely on their knowledge and equipment to safely go through the dark caverns. L38
- ③ The rubble had temporarily blocked the entrance to the cavern.

/stæləg.mait/ /stælək.tait/

stalagmite n. stalactite n.

- ① 石笋(向上生长); 钟乳石

/'laɪm.stəʊn/

limestone n.

- ① 石灰石; 石灰岩
- ② It has long been known that limestone is often used in building construction. L38
- ③ It has never been explained why there is a lot of limestone in the antique store. L40
- ④ He is born and bred in a place where there is a valley between the limestone mountains. L41

/'glɪsən/

glisten v.

- ① to shine and look wet or oily [油亮或潮湿物] 闪光
- ② He noticed that the road glistened after the rain. N2L67
- ③ It is incredible to see sunlight glistening on the water. L36
- ④ She excitedly described to me how the trees glistened with thin ice from the freezing rain. L34

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/'iəri/

eerie adj.

- ① It's eerie to walk through a dark wood at night.
- ② It's not the darkness but the eerie sound of the wind outside the window that made his hair stand on end. L37 L24
- ③ It has always been a mystery to me why there was eerie green light in that wood. L41
- ④ I have an eerie feeling that there was something unusual in the boot of his car. L26

/'dəʊm/

dome n.

- ① The team is working hard to devise a plan to increase the dome construction speed. L26
- ② The inspiring quote is inscribed on the entrance of the dome, reminding visitors to always follow their dreams. L28
- ③ It is anticipated that the dome will become a popular tourist attraction, drawing visitors from all over the world. L26

- have the foresight to do...
- wade through/across

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复 (置顶留言)

方式状语从句

- 1 如, 正如; 2 按照, 依照; 3 像, 就像; 4 如同, 犹如
- Please do it as I told you 按照...
- They watched her closely as a cat watches a rat.
- The whole operation went exactly as it had been planned.
- He paid her 2000 dollars as he had promised.
- I have changed it as you suggest.

现在 N2L40	If 主 did/ was/were ... If 主 could do...	主 + would/should /could/might do
过去 N2L64	If 主 had done... If 主 could have done (=had been able to do)...	主 + would/should /could/might have done
将来	if did/were to do/should do/ could do ...	主 + would/should /could/might do

▪现在

- If I taught this class, I wouldn't give tests.
- If he were here right now, he would help us.
- If I were you, I would accept their invitation.
- If I could speak French fluently, I would travel to France more often.
- If they could afford it, they would buy a house by the beach.

▪过去

- If you had told me about the problem, I would have helped you.
- If they had studied, they would have passed the exam.
- If I hadn't slipped on the stairs, I wouldn't have broken my arm.
- If I could have earned(=had been able to earn) enough money, I should have traveled around the world.
- If you could have prevented(=had been able to prevent) mistakes, you might have been more successful.

▪将来：发生概率低

- If it snowed tomorrow, I would stay at home.
- If he were here tonight, we would play cards.
- If she were to marry Jack, she would be happy.
- If it should rain again tonight, we could stay at home.

■如果if从句中有were/had[过去完成时]/should 则可以省略if然后倒装。

■现在

■If I were you, I wouldn't do that.

■Were I you, ...

■如果if从句中有were/had[过去完成时]/should 则可以省略if然后倒装。

■过去

■If I had known, I would have told you.

■Had I known, ...

■如果if从句中有were/had[过去完成时]/should 则可以省略if然后倒装。

■将来

■If I were to meet him tomorrow, I should ask him about it.

■Were I to meet him tomorrow, ...

■If I should have time tonight, I would call on her.

■Should I have time tonight, ...

42 Story+Expressions

- as it has come to be known
- give a satisfactory explanation for
- rig up
- make a descent into
- extend to
- tunnel a course through
- remain to be done
- edge one's way
- plunge into
- piles of
- wash up
- squeeze through
- switch on
- be suspended from
- round about

as it has come to be known

- The collector, as it has come to be known, can't be bothered to sell any of his valuable items. L34
- The hidden waterfall, as it has come to be known, is tucked away in a remote corner of the forest. L41
- The behavior of certain animals, as it has come to be known, is influenced by the phases of the moon. L38

give a satisfactory explanation for

- He finally gave a satisfactory explanation for why she was in a unique position to shed light on the mysterious event. L38
- The detective gave a satisfactory explanation for how the suspect emerged from the crowd. L35
- The scientist gave a satisfactory explanation for why the phases of the moon are depicted on ancient cave walls. L38

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

rig up

- to make or to build something quickly, using whatever materials are available 快速装配, 搭起
- The organizers wished to rig up a sound system for the music festival. L37
- The students had a sense of achievement after rigging up a projector for their presentation. L39
- What a relief it was when you said you managed to rig up a shelter for the night. L39 N2L67

make a descent into/make descents into

- Many people underestimate how challenging it is to make a descent into the deep ocean. L39
- He announced that the plane was going to make a final descent into the airport. L39
- She specializes in making descents into deep caves. L40

extend to

- It is odd that only this chapter extends to a hundred pages. L37
- Few things could be more impressive than the garden which extends to the river bank. L41
- It has never been explained why the table extends to 10m. L40

tunnel a course through

- The engineer announced that the workers will tunnel a course through the mountain for the high-speed train. L39

- It suddenly dawned on me that the thieves might have tunneled a course through the ground of the bank. L37 N2L19

- It is incredible to see the ants tirelessly tunneled a course through the soil. L36

remain to be done

仍需被做 L36 to be done

- Major questions remain to be answered about the medical school. L24

- The sad truth is that a few problems still remain to be discussed. L23

- Although he had made great effort to connect the dots, several points still remained to be settled.L38

edge one's way

- If someone or something edges somewhere, they move very slowly, gradually, in that direction.

- She attempted to edge her way through the crowd. L20

- I proceeded to edge my way round the back of the house. L22

- I bet he edged his way along the wall. L21

plunge into

- She was about to plunge into the river when the phone rang. L24

- The brave diver who plunged into the deep ocean captured my attention. L26

- He plunged into the icy river to avoid being hit by the coming car. L26

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

piles of

- Sooner or later, there will be piles of rubble everywhere. L39

- He reprimanded me for not washing the piles of dirty dishes. L31

- In my family, throwing piles of clothes on the sofa has consequences. L27

wash up

- (of water) to carry something onto land 冲上岸

- I am amazed to find that the tide washed up a collection of seashells onto the shore. L3

- After the heavy rain, the river washed up a mixture of mud and leaves onto the bank.

squeeze through

- He managed to squeeze through the crowd to be reunited with his family. L36

- It is outrageous that all of you were trying to squeeze through a narrow door. L28

- I was tempted to squeeze through the narrow sideway. L28

switch on

- She got her brother to switch on the heat. L39

- He switched on the alarm under the illusion that it would bring a sense of safety to the house. L41

- The crowd went into raptures when they saw everyone in the concert switch on the flashlights on the phone and singing together. L41

be suspended from

- The worker attended to the large light suspended from the ceiling. L33
- Few things could be more impressive than the stalactites suspended from the roof in a large cavern. L41
- The new painting suspended from the wall bears little resemblance to the artist's previous works.L36

round about

- in the area near a place
- Round about, the busy city streets were filled with people going about their daily routines. L28
- Round about, the market stalls displayed a bewildering variety of fresh fruits and vegetables. L38

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔（置顶留言）

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap

/ɪnˈʃʊə/

insure v.

■to buy insurance so that you will receive money if something bad happens to you, your family, your possessions etc 给...保险; 投保
 ■insure (something/somebody) against loss/damage/theft/sickness

- ① As it has come to be known, many people insure their homes against fire and theft. L42
- ② It seems highly improbable that the company will offer to insure employees against sickness and medical expenses.L36
- ③ She had the foresight to insure her valuable jewelry against theft.

/feɪt/

fete n.

- ① a special occasion to celebrate something 庆祝活动, 盛会
- ② It has always been a mystery to me why I was invited to the fete which included many influential figures. L41
- ③ It's beyond me how she managed to squeeze through the tight crowd and make her way to the front of the stage at the fete. L41&L42

/'pri:mi.əm/

premium n.

■the cost of insurance, especially the amount that you pay each year [尤指每年缴纳的] 保险费
 ■pay the premium

- ① The company gave him permission to pay the premium in installments. L40
- ② If you want all the benefits of full insurance, you need to be prepared to pay the premium. L41
- ③ Only those who are willing to pay the premium can have the privilege of obtaining full membership benefits. L41

/rɪ'kʌvə/

recover v.

■to get back an amount of money that you have spent or lost 重新获得, 收回 [花掉或失去的钱]
 ■recover the cost of

- ① It was not that we don't want to recover the cost of the damaged equipment. L39
- ② The contract [that you will help to recover the cost of the stolen properties] is written in black and white. L37
- ③ The CEO seemed perturbed by the expenses they faced to recover the cost of the project. L39

单词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/əd'mɪtɪdli/

admittedly adv.

- ① used when you are admitting that something is true 诚然, 确实地; 不可否认地
- ② Admittedly, it was challenging to scoop up all the fallen leaves in the backyard after the storm. L39
- ③ Admittedly, I can tolerate a certain level of noise for your convenience, but it becomes unbearable when it's late at night. L41

/pɜ:.tʃəs/

purchase v.

- ① to buy something 购买
- ② Only after careful consideration did I decide to purchase the antique vase. N2L79
- ③ As a special treat, I decided to purchase tickets to a Broadway show for my parents' anniversary. L41
- ④ I feel bewildered by the number of options available when purchasing a new car.L38

/æ'njuəl/

annual adj. 一年一度的, 每年

- ① The annual meeting, which was held yesterday, provided an opportunity for the company's executives to discuss future strategies. N2L77
- ② I look forward to attending the annual music festival and going into raptures when my favorite band performs. N2L37 L41
- ③ The annual performance review provides an opportunity for employees to reflect on their achievements and set goals for the future. L37

/ˈtiːneɪ.dʒə/

teenager n.

- ① The teenager claimed to have climbed Mount Everest. L1
 - ② The teenager was too embarrassed to ask their parents for permission to attend the party. L4
 - ③ The teenager was instructed to clean their room before going out with friends. L5
- teenager n.

/kæp'saɪz/

capsize v.

■if a boat capsizes, or if you capsize it, it turns over in the water (使)〔船〕倾覆

- ① The small fishing boat which was not equipped with life jackets caused panic when it capsized in rough waters. L3
- ② To their horror, the boat capsized in the middle of the lake. L10
- ③ As the boat hit a large wave, the terrified child let out a cry when it began to capsize. L13

/ˈʃɪvə/

shiver v.

■to shake slightly because you are cold or frightened (因寒冷或害怕而)颤抖,哆嗦,发抖

- ① Imagine their dismay when a storm suddenly came, and they were left shivering in the middle of the mountain. L7
- ② It astounded her that he could stand in the freezing water without shivering. L19
- ③ It was not until she entered the haunted house that she began to shiver. L21

/daɪv/ /dəʊv/

dive v. dove

- ① In order to keep his word to his friend, he dove into the deep waters to find the lost treasure. L19
- ② She dove into the pool, complaining bitterly about the cold water temperature. L21
- ③ Born and bred in a family of athletes, he had a natural talent for diving. L41

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/hɔ:l/

haul v.

■to pull something heavy with a continuous steady movement 拖,拉

■haul something off/onto/out of something

- ① With great difficulty, they managed to haul the fallen tree off the road. L25 N2L67
- ② In the dim light, the movers found it hard to haul the piano onto the moving truck. L22&L29
- ③ He insisted that we should haul the old sofa out of the living room. L22

/hɔ:.zəl/

hawser n. 〔船上用的〕缆绳;钢缆

- ① As the storm grew stronger, the sailors had the impulse to secure the hawser tightly to prevent the ship from drifting away. L23 N2L68
- ② The old hawser was replaced by a new one to ensure the safety of the ship. L25
- ③ The experienced captain took possession of the hawser, skillfully guiding the ship into the harbor.

/rɪm/

rim n.

① 圆形物体的) 边沿, 边缘

- ② The ancient artifact had strange symbols inscribed on its rim, which indicated its historical significance. L28
- ③ The initials [engraved on the silver rim of the wine glass] indicated that it belonged to the royal family. L38&L28

/wɪntʃ/

winch n.

- ① 绞车

/ægəˈnɑːzɪŋ/

agonizing adj.

- extremely painful 令人极其痛苦的 令人焦虑不安的
- for one agonizing moment

- ① For one agonizing moment, she considered reducing the price to \$100 just to make the sale. L28
- ② For one agonizing moment, the teacher reprimanded the student for cheating on the test. L31
- ③ For one agonizing moment, the cyclist lost control and collided with a tree. L33

/pɜːtʃ/

perch v.

- be perched on something: to be in a position on top of something or on the edge of something 处在某物的上面[边上]

- ① The little bird which is perched on the branch is attending to its feathers. L33
- ② He is bent on catching the bird which is perched on the lemon tree. L34
- ③ He described to me how he successfully caught the bird perched on the edge of the roof. L34

/prɪˈkeəriəsli/

precariously adv.

- likely to fall, or likely to cause someone to fall 可能倒地, 不稳地, 不牢靠地

- ① The book, precariously balanced on the edge of the table, could easily slide off. L33
- ② Only then did she realized that the ladder was placed precariously against the wall. L40
- ③ It is silly to lean precariously out of the window. L40

/əʊ.vəˈbæləns/

overbalance v.

- to fall over or nearly fall over because you lose balance 失去平衡

- ① The overloaded truck overbalanced on the steep hill and got out of control, which set up a chain of reactions. L33
- ② The man [standing on the edge of the bridge] overbalanced and plunged into the river. L42
- ③ The sudden gust of wind caused the tree to overbalance and fall. N2L88

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/klæmp/

clamp n.

- ① 夹具;夹子;夹钳

/vɜːtikəli/

vertically adv.

- pointing up in a line that forms an angle of 90° with a flat surface 垂直的; 直立的

- ① The picture was suspended vertically from the ceiling. L42
- ② The students were puzzled by the vertically arranged numbers on the board. L38
- ③ It's silly of her to think she can balance a cup of coffee vertically on her head without spilling. L40

/tɒrənt/

torrent n.

- a large amount of water moving very quickly and strongly in a particular direction 湍流, 急流
- a torrent of 突如其来大量的...

- ① He attempted to wade through the raging torrent. L8&L42
- ② The suspect was put under arrest after the police discovered a torrent of evidence linking him to the crime. L40
- ③ It has always been a mystery to me why a torrent of emotions descend upon me whenever I heard that particular song. L40&L41&L14

/ri:'baʊnd/

rebound v.

- if a ball or other moving object rebounds, it moves quickly back away from something it has just hit (球或其他运动物体) 弹回, 反弹, 跳回
- rebound off

- ① The basketball rebounded off the rim and into the hands of the opposing team, which provided them with an opportunity to score. L5
- ② Oddly enough, the ball rebounded off the wall and landed perfectly in the player's hands. L18
- ③ He received an electric shock, which caused him to rebound off the wire. L18

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- insure (something/somebody)
- against loss/damage/theft/sickness
- pay the premium
- recover the cost of
- haul something off/onto/out of something
- for one agonizing moment
- be perched on sth.
- a torrent of
- rebound off

homework

1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 间隔重复 (置顶留言)

43 Grammar

虚拟语气的 doing

- 可以用进行时 doing
- If we weren't living in the twenty-first century, people would think you were a witch.
- If human beings were not killing each other, we could be living a happy life.
- If you hadn't been studying so hard, you might have failed the exam.

现在 N2L40	If 主 did/ was/were ... If 主 could do...	主 + would/should /could/might do
过去 N2L64	If 主 had done... If 主 could have done (=had been able to do)...	主 + would/should /could/might have done
将来	if did/were to do/should do/ could do ...	主 + would/should /could/might do

so that 目的 VS 结果

- 目的：从句多用may/might, can/could, should 等情态动词
- 结果：从句较少用情态动词，并非不可
- 目的(以便) VS 结果 (所以)
- She left early, so that she caught the train. 结果
- She left early so that she could caught the train. 目的
- She explained the story so that the students understood it. 结果
- She explained the story so that the students might understand it. 目的
- The hall was guarded by soldiers so that no outsiders might get in. 目的
- The hall was crowded with people so that they couldn't get in. 结果

43 Story+Expressions

- doing sth...is a standard practice =it's
- a standard practice to do sth.
- in the event of
- It is not uncommon to hear that ...
- make a claim for
- at the same time
- look on
- put sth. into operation
- was drawn towards
- fix a. to b./be fixed to
- rest against
- start up
- set up
- send a. doing

doing sth...is a standard practice it's a standard practice to do sth.

- Needless to say, paying a deposit is a standard practice.L36
- However unwilling you are, it is standard practice to search visitors as they enter the building. L35
- It is standard practice to punish those who aren't punctual for the meeting. L37

in the event of

- She underestimated how challenging a marathon can be in the event of extreme weather conditions. L39
- In the event of heavy rain, the outdoor concert will be moved to an indoor location.
- In the event of a fire, please leave the building immediately.

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

It is not uncommon to hear that...

- It is not uncommon to hear that some people condition themselves to wake up early by setting multiple alarms. L37
- It is not uncommon to hear that customers lodge a complaint when they receive poor service or faulty products. L37
- It is not uncommon to hear that some people obtain money by deception.L40

make a claim for

- They made a claim for compensation and blamed the airline for the delay in their flight. L37
- The construction workers made a claim for additional funds to tunnel a course through the rocky mountain. L42
- I had to make a claim for compensation after my luggage was lost during the flight.

at the same time

- She was talking to her friends while at the same time switching on the light. L42
- The carpenter rigged up the shelf and listened to a book at the same time. L42
- It is outrageous that she was texting her friend while at the same time listening to the lecture in class. L28

look on

■to watch something without becoming involved in it yourself

■The children just looked on as their father charged at the shallow pool of water ahead of them. L39

■We just looked on as the divers plunged into the river in front of us.

■She looked on as the children, who were playing in the park, laughed and ran around. N2L77

put into operation

■It is naive to believe this system will ever be put into operation. L36

■It has long been known that the law of renewable energy has already been put into operation. L38

■The plan which has already been worked out remains to be put into operation. L42

be drawn towards

■Only when she saw the man standing on the beach did she realize that she was being drawn towards the bank. L40

■They deduced that the ship might have been slowly drawn towards the land. L38

■There was a note of triumph in his voice when he said that the big fish had been slowly drawn toward the bank by him alone. L37

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

fix a. to b./be fixed to

■The painter gave a satisfactory explanation for fixing the artwork to the ceiling. L42

■Whether he has fixed the mirror to the bathroom wall or not is still uncertain. L29

■The shelf was fixed to the wall by force.

rest against

■From the footprints in the sand, we can deduce that someone had stopped to rest against the tree. L38

■The painting seems to have been carefully placed to rest against the wall. L36

■I decided to take a video of the beautiful sunset as it seems to rest against the horizon. L38&L27

start up

■ Sooner or later, she will start up the computer to begin her work. L39

■My father had the foresight to start up the engine to check for any issues before going out on the journey. L42

■He started up his motorcycle and roared down the hill. L37

set up

- to create something or start it
- He will have set up a new business in the city by the end of next fall. N2L37
- Young as she is, she was able to set up a beautiful display of flowers for the wedding ceremony. L26 N2L43
- It's possible that the organization will set up a charity event to raise funds.L38

习惯
用法
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

其他习惯用法

结合学过的语法

send a. doing

- I'll never forget the time when the strong wind sent the umbrella flying down the street. L14
- However carefully he tried, he still made a loud noise which sent the birds flying out of the tree. L35
- The loud music sent the crowd dancing, as they couldn't resist it.

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段,直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔(置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/ˈpɒzɪtɪvli/

positively adv.

■used to emphasize that something is true, especially when this seems surprising 真正地, 确实, 实在是〔用于强调某事物的真实性, 尤在其看上去令人吃惊时使用〕

- ① Practical jokes could positively reduce some people to tears sometimes. L40 L33
- ② She could positively get into a panic when unforeseen changes happen. L33
- ③ You can console yourself that you could positively make a quick recovery. L29

/kəmˈpɑːtmənt/

compartment n.

- ① (铁路客车车厢分隔成的)隔间
- ② 【船】防水密封舱 L10

/kræmpt/

cramped adj.

■ a cramped room, building etc does not have enough space for the people in it 狭窄的;拥挤的;狭小的;

- ① Taking the cramped living conditions into account, the family decided to find a bigger home. L17
- ② It seems that her kitchen was small and cramped. L9
- ③ It was beyond me how they managed to fit so many people into such a cramped meeting room. L41 N2L67

/ˈstʌfi/

stuffy adj.

■ a room or building that is stuffy does not have enough fresh air in it 通风不畅的

- ① The stuffy classroom made it difficult for the teacher to capture the attention of the students. L26
- ② They opened the windows in the stuffy room so that fresh air could come in. N2L59
- ③ He went to great lengths to prove that the stuffy office environment was negatively affecting his productivity. L28

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/məˈnɒtənəs/

monotonous adj.

■boring because of always being the same 单调的, 乏味的, 一味的

- ① My job can be so monotonous sometimes, for I do the same tasks over and over again every day.
- ② At the same time, the monotonous sound of the rain hitting the roof brought a sense of calm.L43
- ③ His eyes lit up at the mere mention of a new adventure, as he was so eager to escape the monotonous task. L11&L41 N2L57

/ˈrɪðəm/

rhythm n.

节律; 节奏; 律动

- ① The drummer's rhythm was so captivating that the entire audience couldn't help dancing. L37
- ② It has long been known that finding the rhythm in the music and moving accordingly is very important in dancing. L38

/klɪk/

click v.

■to make a short hard sound, or make something produce this sound (使)发出咔嚓声

- ① It strikes me as odd that she kept clicking her pen nervously during the meeting. L37&L28
- ② As the meeting drew to a close, the participants clicked their pens shut and left the room. L41
- ③ The sound of high heels clicking on the floor woke me up at midnight, which made my hair stand on end. L24

/lʌl/

lull v.

■to make someone feel calm or as if they want to sleep 使昏昏欲睡

■lull sb. to sleep

- ① The waves crashing against the shore created a monotonous rhythm, which lulled me to sleep. N2L77
- ② The sound of the rain lulled me to sleep in the process of reading a monotonous book. L29
- ③ The calming music in the background was supposed to lull me to sleep, but my mind was still conscious. L30

/s n æ tʃ /

snatch n.

- ① in snatches: for short periods 断断续续
- ② Despite the comfortable bed, I always sleep in snatches during the night. L3
- ③ I always sleep in snatches whenever I stay in noisy neighborhood. L14
- ④ It's true that sleep came in snatches last night, but I still felt relaxed today. L16

/ˈsli:pə/

sleeper n.

- ① get a sleeper
- ② I underestimated how difficult it would be to get a sleeper before the Chinese Spring Festival. L39
- ③ It's silly of me to get a sleeper for such a short trip. L40
- ④ He had to overcome a lot of obstacles to get a sleeper. L39

/ˈfʌmbəl/

fumble v.

■to try to hold, move, or find something with your hands in an awkward way 笨手笨脚地做, 胡乱摸找

- ① All of a sudden, she started fumbling through her purse to find her phone as it rang loudly in the quiet room. L33
- ② He stopped to fumble with the lock on the door, trying to open it in the dark. L36
- ③ The sad truth is that the student who fumbled through his notes during the exam failed to find the answer he needed. L23

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ɪnˈspekʃən/

inspection n.

■a careful examination of something to find out more about it or to check for anything wrong 仔细检查

■for inspection

- ① The documents are now available for inspection. L41
- ② The equipment is being prepared for inspection before it can be used.
- ③ There was a chance that the product would be chosen for inspection. L36

/ɪˈnevɪtəbli/

inevitably adv.

■used for saying that something is certain to happen and cannot be avoided 必然地, 不可避免地

- ① It is inevitably heartbreaking to be separated from loved ones during long periods of travel. L36
- ② The strict training program inevitably conditions athletes to push their bodies to the limit. L37
- ③ It is inevitably important to insure your valuable possessions against theft. L43

/destɪˈneɪʃən/

destination n.

目的地, 终点

- ① The tour guide conducted us to our destination. L37
- ② I have developed an unshakable faith in reaching my destination. L37
- ③ With determination, she edged her way through obstacles to reach her destination. L42

/ɪgˈzɔːst/

exhaust v.

■to make someone feel extremely tired 使精疲力竭
■be/feel exhausted from

- ① I felt exhausted from rigging up the stage equipment for the concert. L42
- ② We were exhausted from sweeping up the leaves in the yard. L33
- ③ He was exhausted from studying for his exams all night.

/ˈməʊtəweɪ/

motorway n.

高速公路

- ① There are still many tasks that remain to be done before the motorway construction project is complete. L42
- ② I wish there were more rest areas along the motorway for drivers to take breaks during long journeys. L12
- ③ The workers had to haul the damaged car out of the motorway after the accident. L43

/ˈfɛrɪ/

ferry n.

渡船

- ① a boat that carries people or goods across a river or a narrow area of water
- ② We had to pay the premium to take our car on the ferry to the island. L43
- ③ The cat was perched on the edge of the ferry, curiously watching the waves below. L43
- ④ As the storm approached, the passengers on the ferry looked on anxiously, hoping for a safe journey. L43

/kruːz/

cruise n.

■a journey by boat for pleasure 乘船游览
■go on a cruise 乘坐游艇等进行旅游

- ① Taking part in activities like dance lessons or cooking classes during the cruise is a standard practice. L43
- ② Let's plan to go on a cruise for our next vacation. It'll be so much fun! N2L38
- ③ I can't wait to go on a cruise with my friends and relax on the deck while watching the sunset.

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈsɪvəlaɪz/

civilize v.

■to improve a society so that it is more organized and developed, and often more fair or comfortable
使开化, 使文明

■civilized: used to describe a pleasant or comfortable place or thing: 愉快舒适的

- ① There is no doubt that the luxury hotel provided a civilized atmosphere. L25
- ② It has long been known that China is a highly civilized country. L38
- ③ It is unacceptable to litter everywhere in a civilized society. L36

/ˈspɛɪʃəs/

spacious adj.

宽敞的

- ① The children were excited to find a spacious room where they could run wild and play freely. L41
- ② She switched on all the lights in the spacious room. L42
- ③ The basketball rebounded off the walls of the spacious gym. L43

/ˈsiːsɪk/

seasick adj.

晕船的

■get/feel/be seasick

- ① I had the privilege of going on a cruise, but unfortunately, I couldn't enjoy it as I was seasick the entire time. L4
- ② It has never been explained why some people are more likely to get seasick than others. L40&L9
- ③ The ship swerved to avoid a coming boat, which caused many passengers to feel seasick. L39 N2L88

/ɪn'tɪmɪdeɪt/

intimidate v.

■to make someone feel worried and not confident

使害怕, 使失去信心

■be intimidated by

- ① To his dismay, she refused to be intimidated by his threats. L23
- ② He never seems to be intimidated by anything.
- ③ I can't conceal the fact that I was intimidated by the big occasion. L28
- ④ She was intimidated by what she saw on the promontory. L3

/dɪsəd'vɑ:ntrɪdʒ/

disadvantage n.

- ① have the disadvantage of doing
- ② Watching a horror movie has the disadvantage of causing nightmares. L10
- ③ Driving at a fantastic speed has the disadvantage of easily causing accidents. L6
- ④ It has long been known that working late hours has the disadvantages of affecting your health. L38

/ɪg'zɪləreɪtɪŋ/

exhilarating adj.

■making you feel happy, excited, and full of energy

使人兴高采烈的; 令人激动的

- ① Leading an exhilarating life can be incredibly fulfilling. L9
- ② We've just got some exhilarating news that the students would be rewarded with a scholarship. L15
- ③ My first parachute jump, which I travelled miles to experience, was extremely exhilarating. L41

/ɪ'skeɪpɪst/

escapist n.

■adj. (of an activity, form of entertainment, etc.) that helps you avoid or forget unpleasant or boring things 逃避现实的

■n.逃避现实的人

- ① Some people consider theme parks to be a special type of escapist experience for families. L17&L15
- ② She is staring at an escapist who is reading science fiction novels. L22&L24
- ③ It is clear that the beach attracts many escapists who seek relaxation and a break from their daily routine. L21

/sɪp/

sip v.

① to drink something slowly, taking very small mouthfuls
小口地喝, 抿, 啣

- ② She sipped her tea while squinting at the small print in the book. L22
- ③ Sarah insisted that we should sip the wine slowly to fully appreciate its flavor. L22
- ④ He was anxious to sip the exotic cocktail at the bar. L22

/ʃæm'peɪn/

champagne n.

香槟

- ① I pestered my mother to open a bottle of champagne for celebration. L29
- ② Her sister reprimanded her for drinking too much champagne. L31
- ③ He presented me with a bottle of champagne. L31

/rɪ'faɪnmənt/

refinement n.

■an improvement, usually a small one, to something
〔细微的〕改进, 改善

- ① In the suburbs, unexpected refinement can be found in the gardens and architecture. L33
- ② The new edition of the book includes a few refinements based on reader feedback. L9
- ③ There is always hope that unexpected refinement will emerge. L34

/ɪ'breɪtkeɪŋ/

brehtaking adj.

① very impressive, exciting, or surprising
令人惊叹的 激动人心的

- ② Few things could be more impressive than the breathtaking sunset over a lake surrounded by mountains. L41
- ③ They were amazed to see the breathtaking view at the bottom of the valley. L34
- ④ The hikers discovered a breathtaking waterfall by chance. L34

/sɔːl/

soar v.

高飞, 翱翔

- ① Watching the eagle soar high in the sky, I wish to have the same freedom one day. L37
- ② As the hot air balloon soared above the city, I presumed that we would have a breathtaking view from up there. L36
- ③ I often have the impulse to soar high above the city and escape from the world below. L23

/ˈɛfətlesli/

effortlessly adv.

不费力的, 轻松自如的

- ① The detective effortlessly connect the dots to solve the mystery. L38
- ② Towards the end of the race, the runner effortlessly overtakes his competitors to win the marathon. L36
- ③ It seems odd that he could effortlessly play a complex piece of song on the piano. L37

/ˈlændskeɪp/

landscape n.

■ an area of countryside or land of a particular type, used especially when talking about its appearance
(陆上的) 风景, 景致, 景色

- ① As a nature lover, she goes into raptures every time she explores a beautiful landscape. L41&L14
- ② She took out her camera to capture the breathtaking landscape.
- ③ At the mere mention of the mountain landscape, his eyes light up with excitement. L41&L11

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/frɛʃ/

fresh adj.

■ full of energy because you are not tired 精力充沛

- ① It astounded me that although she has worked all day, she still looks fresh. L19
- ② He was under the impression that he could stay up all night and still feel fresh in the morning. L32 误以为
- ③ However hard I worked, I would always be fresh and relaxed in the early morning the next day. L35

/ˈkrʌmpəld/

uncrumpled adj.

- ① She emerged from the long flight looking surprisingly fresh and uncrumpled. L35
- ② After taking a short walk in the park, I felt fresh and uncrumpled. L19
- ③ It is incredible to me that the athlete crossed the finish line, still looking fresh and uncrumpled. L36

- lull sb. to sleep
- in snatches: for short periods
- get a sleeper
- be/feel exhausted from
- go on a cruise
- get/feel/be seasick
- be intimidated by
- have the disadvantage of doing

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复 (置顶留言)

44 Grammar

manage to do something 【□】

- succeed in doing sth. N2L36 【写】
- Scientists claim they have succeeded in finding a cure for cancer.
- to succeed in doing something difficult, especially after trying
very hard
- How did you manage to persuade him?
- How do you manage to stay so slim?
- We somehow managed to persuade him.
- I don't know how I'll manage to do it, but I'll be there.

44 Story+Expressions

- take sb's mind off sth.
- comes in snatches
- fumble to do sth.
- more often than not
- by comparison
- stretch your legs
- devise ways of doing sth.
- settle back
- keep sb. occupied
- recover from

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

take sb's mind off sth.

- I went for a hike and waded across a river, hoping it would take my mind off the work. L42
- She made a claim for compensation to help take her mind off the pain and trauma. L43
- He decided to make a descent into the cave to explore its mysteries and take his mind off the recent breakup. L42

comes in snatches

- It is not uncommon to hear that students' concentration in class comes in snatches. L43
- During the camping trip, they had to make do with limited supplies, resulting in sleep coming in snatches. L41
- There is a definite relation between interrupted sleep and dreams coming in snatches. L38

fumble to do sth.

- She fumbled to answer her phone while waiting for the red light. L33
- She fumbled to find her notes while giving a presentation, which reduced her to tears in front of her colleagues. L33
- She fumbled to find her keys at the bottom of her bag. L34

more often than not

- More often than not, I select from a variety of clothes when choosing what to wear in the morning. L38
- More often than not, I can't help crying when I watch a heartwarming movie. L37
- More often than not, we learn valuable lessons and gain experience through making mistakes.

by comparison

- By comparison, only two of the five men were acquainted with the suspect. L36
- By comparison, only the newest evidence presented in court will help to prove his innocence. L35
- By comparison, the first painting bears a stronger resemblance to the original artwork than the second one. L36

stretch one's legs

- to go for a walk, especially after sitting for a long time (久坐后) 伸腿, 散步
- to go for a walk, especially after sitting for a long time
- Neither will you have an opportunity to stretch your legs. L37&L12
- It was not until the end of the journey that I finally found an opportunity to stretch my legs. L21
- I expect her to stretch her legs during the long bus journey. L22

devise ways of doing sth.

- We need to devise ways of hauling the heavy boxes off the truck. L43
- We need to devise ways of recovering the cost of the new equipment. L43
- In order to solve the mystery, the detective had to devise ways of connecting the dots between the seemingly unrelated clues. L38

settle back

- to lean back in a bed or chair, and relax and enjoy yourself
舒服的坐下 (仰坐)
- They are under the illusion that they can now settle back to enjoy a friendly supper. L41
- Everyone seem to have settled back and started to relax. L36
- As a special treat, she asked me to settle back and enjoy the show. L41

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

keep sb. occupied

- With the advent of computer technology, people can easily keep themselves occupied with endless online games and social media platforms. L38
- He plotted to steal the jewels and keep the detective occupied with false information. L36
- A series of books kept the children occupied with adventure. L33

recover from

- After receiving proper medical care and attention, the stray dogs finally recovered from their illness. L31&L33
- The therapy served as a prelude to the patient's journey to recover from their painful experience. N2L64 L33

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔 (置顶留言)

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/dɪməˈkrætɪk/

democratic adj. 民主的

- ① It is necessary for governments to give a satisfactory explanation for their decisions in a democratic society. L42
- ② It has long been known that a democratic government allows its citizens to participate in decision-making processes. L38

/rɪˈstrɪkt/

restrict v. 约束, 限制

- ① She seems perturbed by small children, as they are likely to restrict her freedom. L39&L9
- ② The agreement will restrict competition to varying degrees. L24
- ③ It was not until 2014 that we restricted class sizes to 20 students. L21

/əˈbjuːz/

abuse v.

■ to deliberately use something for the wrong purpose or for your own advantage 滥用, 妄用

- ① For one agonizing moment, I found that she abused the trust the firm had placed in her. L43
- ② More often than not, they abused their positions of power. L44
- ③ He abused his power by devising ways of giving jobs to his friends. L44
- ④ He has been abusing his authority to recover the cost of the project. N2L52 L44

/kənˈten.ʃən/

contention n.

■ strong opinion that someone expresses 论点, 主张, (尤指争论时的)看法
 ■ contention that+句子

- ① His contention that the plan will never work strikes me as odd. L37
- ② There is a definite relation between the new project and her main contention that healthy eating should be encouraged. L38
- ③ Columbus's contention that the earth was round turned out to be correct. L3

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/ʌnˈtəʊld/

untold adj.

■ used to emphasize how bad something is 难以形容的; 不可计量的 (强调情况糟糕)
 ■ untold harm/pain/damage

- ① He might plunge into the well and be free from untold pain. L42&L27
- ② Much as I try to avoid it, this might cause untold damage to her health. L26
- ③ It is anticipated that this might do untold harm to the environment. L26

/pəˈpetʃʊəl/

perpetual adj.

■ continuing all the time without changing or stopping 连续不断的, 无休止的

- ① Life's perpetual challenges can be scary, but many cherish the hope that their efforts will lead to success. L34&L4
- ② He suggested that the cycle of poverty can feel perpetual. L36
- ③ The mere fact that the struggle for equality seems perpetual reduces her to tears. L33

/kwɪnˈtjuː.plət/

quintuplet n.

- ① one of five babies born to the same mother at the same time 五胞胎之一
- ② The mother devised a way to keep her quintuplets occupied. L26&L44
- ③ She made a bargain with one of her quintuplets. L28
- ④ It's difficult to lull one of her quintuplets to sleep. L27&L44

/əb'skjʊərəti/

obscurity n.

▪ the state of not being known or remembered 无名, 默默无闻

▪ live/work/remain in obscurity

- ① Despite his talent, he chose to live in obscurity. L3
- ② Oddly enough, she decided to work in obscurity as a volunteer. L18
- ③ The artist would rather remain in obscurity than seek fame. L14

/ˈrædɪ.kəli/

radically adv.

- ① completely or extremely
- ② Attitudes toward the anonymous letter have changed radically. L19
- ③ It astounded me that the new methods are radically different from the old. L19
- ④ It looked as if the two artists had radically different styles. L20

/ɪk'sklʊ:.sɪv/

exclusive adj.

▪ available or belonging only to particular people, and not shared 独有的; 独享的; 专用的

▪ exclusive access/right/use

- ① He pestered me to give him exclusive access to the software. L29
- ② She suspected that he had the exclusive use of the room during his recovery. L29
- ③ It became an accepted fact that this company has exclusive rights to film the novel. L30

/ˈnɜ:.səri/

nursery n. 医院保育室; 幼儿园; 婴儿卧室

- ① nursery school/teacher/education
- ② I think it the nurses' duty to take care of the baby at the hospital nursery. L30
- ③ I am under the impression that it took the nursery teachers months to bring their class of boys under control. L32
- ④ What a relief it was when I found that a new nursery school is being built in the village. L39

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复 (置顶留言)

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/kəmə:.ʃəlaɪ'zeɪ.ʃən/

commercialization n.

- ① the act of using something to try to make a profit, especially in a way that other people do not approve of 商业化
- ② He pointed out that I underestimated the power of commercialization on traditional culture. L39
- ③ He added that the commercialization of education leads to inequality. L40

/kə'mɒdətɪ/

commodity n.

- ① a product that is bought and sold 商品
- ② The company specializes in trading agricultural commodities such as wheat and corn. L40
- ③ There is a definite relation between the rise in demand for oil and an increase in the price of this commodity. L38
- ④ He deduced that the black market depends on the illegal trade of rare commodities. L38

- contention that+句子
- untold harm/pain/damage
- live/work/remain in obscurity
- exclusive access/right/use
- nursery school/teacher/education

to do 非谓语

- L36 结构+含义
- to do 作定语
- time时间 / way方法 / right 权利/
change机会/reason理由/effort努力...
- Thank you for giving me the
chance to make the speech.

Despite the government's best efforts to keep you from learning to read or write English, you few have managed to do so.

The Power of One (1992)

We're gonna give you one last chance to open this door, buddy.

The Killing of Kenneth Chamberlain (2020)

There's no reason to panic,
I promise she's fine.

Aurora Teagarden Mysteries: An Inheritance to Die For (2019)

be expecting a baby:

...:if a woman is expecting, she is going to have a baby 怀孕了

Her name is Rose, and she's getting married and expecting a baby.

Gracie's Choice: A Story of Love (2004)

同位定语从句?
赵俊英《现代英语语法》
summative modifier

▸ How?

1. 写一个完整的句子

2. 最后加上一个“,” 然后找到一个可以总结全句的名词

3. n. 后+一个定语从句

▸ 原句 The teacher gave a long lecture that covered many topics.

▸ 改写 The teacher gave a long lecture, an informative session that covered many topics.

▸ 原句 The dog barked loudly, which startled the neighbors.

▸ 改写 The dog barked loudly, a sudden noise that startled the neighbors.

▸ 原句 They suddenly became the parents of quintuplets, four girls and a boy, and this radically changed their lives..

▸ 改写 They suddenly became the parents of quintuplets, four girls and a boy, an event which radically changed their lives.

▸ The storm damaged many houses, a disaster that left many families homeless.

▸ She found an old diary in the attic, a discovery which revealed many family secrets.

▸ The park is filled with children, kids who love to play on the swings and slides.

▸ They won the championship, an achievement which made their school proud.

▸ The volunteers cleaned the beach, an effort that greatly improved the environment.

45 Story+Expressions

- it is extremely doubtful whether...
- act on...
- pour in
- press for
- act as
- press conference
- oxygen tent
- pay the price for

it is extremely doubtful whether

- It is extremely doubtful whether he will lull her to sleep. L44
- It is extremely doubtful whether he could get a sleeper during the spring festival. L44
- It is extremely doubtful whether he will muster up the courage to explore the antique shop. L34

act on

- to do something as a reaction to a particular thing such as an instruction, a feeling, or some information
按照...而行动
- He denied acting on impulse. L16
- Whether he succeed in acting on the clue is unclear. L29 N2L36
- I bet you always act on instinct. L20

pour in 大量地涌进来

- It is not uncommon to hear that people pour in from different parts of the world to watch the world cup. L43
- Because of the positive influence [the charity had on the community], donations poured in. L21&L26
- I can't conceal the fact that customers poured in after hearing the magic word "discount." L28

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

press for

to keep asking for something
催促;敦促;迫切需要;

- She announced that we must continue to press for full equality. L39
- There is always hope that they will continue to press for a change in the law. L34
- He noted with satisfaction that workers could now press for improvements. N37

act as

- to perform a particular role or function 担任...角色; 作为, 充当
- I wish that the story could act as a warning to other buyers. L12
- She is willing to act as an interpreter for us. L4
- It seems that he is happy to act as a consultant to the company. L9

press conference

- The press conference was a prelude to unforeseen changes in the suburbs. L33
- There is some confusion about problems discussed at the press conference. L33
- The organizers had to devise ways of keeping the audience's attention during the press conference. L44

oxygen tent

- The patient spent the night in an oxygen tent and felt exhausted from the treatment. L44
- The hospital hoped to recover the cost of the oxygen tent. L43
- He informed me that we are unable to use the oxygen tent now.L5&L35

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

pay the price for 为...付出代价

- She paid the price for neglecting her health and now is afflicted by serious illness. L27
- He paid the price for living by doing extreme sports. L27
- They paid the price for prising open the antique jewelry box. L34

homework

1. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
3. 重复间隔（置顶留言）

.....
Questions

.....
Homework

.....
Summary & Recap
.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/pli:d/ /'ignərəns/

plead v. ignorance n.

辩解 无知 不懂

- ① plead ignorance (of sth.)
声称对某事一无所知或不知情
- ② If he were to plead ignorance of the rules, it would not excuse his actions. L42
- ③ If I had known the truth, I would not have pleaded ignorance of the matter. N2L64
- ④ If someone asks me about the meeting, I'll just plead ignorance.

/pʌblɪ'keɪʃən/

publication n.

- ① a book, magazine etc 书; 刊物; 著作; 出版物
- ② The article in this publication extols the virtues of meditation. L41
- ③ I've just read a fascinating publication about space exploration.
- ④ This magazine is my favorite publication, so I look forward to it every month. N2L37

/nju:liwedz/

newlyweds

- ① a man and a woman who have recently married 新婚夫妇, [一对] 新人
- ② The newlyweds are grateful to their families for the beautiful wedding they organized. L40
- ③ Born and bred in the same town, the newlyweds have a lot to talk about their hometown. L41

/'geɪ.li/

gaily adv.

- ① in a happy way 快乐地, 欢乐地
- ② She gaily danced at the party, but she will pay the price for staying up too late. L45
- ③ He gaily laughed with his friends, but he will pay the price for not studying for the test.
- ④ They gaily enjoyed their ice cream, but they might pay the price for eating too much sugar.

/'leɪzə/

leisure n.

- time when you are not working or studying and can relax and do things you enjoy 空闲, 闲暇, 业余时间
- leisure time/activity

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

- ① I love to read books in my leisure time to relax.
- ② Playing video games is a fun leisure activity for many teenagers. N2L20
- ③ I try to spend my leisure time doing things that make me happy, like painting. N2L59

/ki:n/

keen adj.

- wanting to do something or wanting something to happen very much 热衷的, 渴望的, 热切的
- be keen to do sth.
- be keen on doing sth.

- ① He told me that he was keen to help.
- ② The explorers were keen on making a descent into the cave. L42
- ③ She was keen to squeeze through the narrow opening to explore the hidden passage in the ancient ruins. L42

/ədvaɪzəri/

advisory adj.

- ① advisory service 咨询服务
- ② Many people think it is outrageous that the advisory service charges a high fee. L28
- ③ It is outrageous that the advisory service does not provide clear information.
- ④ It is outrageous that the advisory service does not help those in need.

/nɒvɪs/

novice n. 新手; 初学者

- ① The novice actor tried hard to make the audience laugh to tears during the play. L29
- ② Even as a novice, he managed to make his classmates laugh to tears with his funny stories.
- ③ The novice comedian can make everyone laugh to tears with his funny jokes.

/kən'sju:mə/

consumer n. 消费者

- ① The company decided to act on consumer feedback to improve their products. L45
- ② The company specializes in creating environmentally friendly products for consumers. L40
- ③ It would be funny to see a consumer trying to return a product they bought five years ago. L40

/ə'sembəl/

assemble v.

- ① to put all the parts of something together 组装, 装配
- ② The team was granted permission to assemble the product in the factory. L40
- ③ He asked for permission to assemble the equipment in the workshop. L40
- ④ It's silly for them to assemble the product without proper training. L40

/ˈaʊtlət/

outlet n.

- a way of expressing or getting rid of strong feelings (强烈情感的) 发泄途径[方法]
- provide a/an adj. outlet for sth. 为某事提供一个发泄口/出口
- ① The new community center provides a creative outlet for local artists.
- ② The park provides a fun outlet for kids to play and enjoy nature.
- ③ The garden provides a peaceful outlet for her to relax and think.

/kri'eɪtɪv/

creative adj.

- ① involving the use of imagination to produce new ideas or things 创造(性)的
- ② He decided to take advantage of his creative skills to pursue a career in design. L37
- ③ It's not the tools you use, but your creative ways of painting that truly matters. L37
- ④ She noted with satisfaction that her creative efforts were finally being recognized. L37

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/hændimæn/

handyman n.

- ① someone who is good at doing repairs and practical jobs in the house 手巧的人 能工巧匠
- ② The handyman consulted the manual to find the exact problem. L37
- ③ It seems odd that the handyman did not bring his tools to the repair job. L37
- ④ The customer decided to lodge a complaint against the handyman for unfinished work. L37

/rɪ'zɔ:sfəl/

resourceful adj.

- ① good at finding ways of dealing with practical problems 足智多谋的, 机智的
- ② The resourceful employee is always punctual for meetings. L37
- ③ Although he is resourceful, he finds it hard to finish his homework on time. L29
- ④ Despite the obstacles, the resourceful team managed to complete the project. L3 N2L67

/fju:z/

fuse v.

- ① if electrical equipment fuses, or if you fuse it, it stops working because a fuse has melted (使)[保险丝]熔断
- ② It was a chance in a million that the light fused at the exact moment he turned it off. L36
- ③ He suggested that the light might have fused again. L36(暗示) N2L19
- ④ There was a chance that the faulty switch caused the light to fuse. L36 N2L88

/rɪkəti/

rickety adj.

■ a rickety structure or piece of furniture is in very bad condition, and likely to break easily [结构或家具] 快要散架的, 摇摇晃晃的

- ① It seems wildly improbable that the rickety old bridge can stay long. L36
- ② She was naive enough to think the rickety ladder could support her weight. L36
- ③ It is outrageous to risk lives by crossing the rickety bridge. L28

/klog/

clog v.

■ to block something or become blocked 阻塞, 塞住
 ■ clogged adj. get clogged

- ① If the pipes get clogged, there is a chance that we will need a plumber. L36
- ② When the pipes get clogged, there is a chance that the bathroom will smell bad.
- ③ If the pipes get clogged, there is a chance that it will take a long time to fix.

/dɪˈluːʒən/

delusion n.

■ a false belief about yourself or the situation you are in 错觉; 妄想
 ■ sb. be under the delusion that+句子

- ① He was under the delusion that his methods could shed light on the survey. L38
- ② They were under the delusion that the advent of social media would not impact their business. L38
- ③ He was under the delusion that his success was strongly correlated with his working skill. L38

/lɔːn/ /məʊə/

lawn mower

- ① The gardener selected from a variety of lawn mowers available at the store. L38 N2L90
- ② They relied on the old lawn mower to keep their garden tidy. L38
- ③ With the passage of time, the old lawn mower started to break down very often. L38

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
方式/地点/时间	6123456
结合习惯用法	结合学过的语法

/əˈdʒʌstmənt/

adjustment n.

- ① a small change made to a machine, system, or calculation [机器、系统或计算的] 调整, 调节
- ② need a few minor adjustments
- ③ The plan needs a few minor adjustments and is based on the assumption that everyone will help.
- ④ The project needs a few minor adjustments and is based on the assumption that we will finish on time. L38

/skruː/

screw n. 螺丝, 螺(丝)钉

- ① There is always hope that the missing screw will be found when cleaning the garage. L34
- ② He was bent on fixing the shelf himself using screws. L34
- ③ The homeowner described to the handyman how the screw came loose. L34

/dɪsˈmæntl/

dismantle v.

- ① to take a machine or piece of equipment apart so that it is in separate pieces 拆开, 拆卸 [机器或设备]
- ② She mustered up the courage to dismantle the old desk left by her grandmother. L34
- ③ He holds a fascination for dismantling old machines to understand how it works. L34
- ④ Prising the rusty lock open was the first step to dismantling the old chest. L34

/tʃʌŋk/

chunk n.

■ a large thick piece of something that does not have an even shape 厚块, 大块
 ■ a chunk of /chunks of

- ① The car swerved to avoid hitting a chunk of ice on the road. L39
- ② The vehicle ground to a halt when it hit chunks of stone on the highway. L39
- ③ He ate chunks of chocolate while watching his favorite movie.

/snæp/
snap v.

- ① to break with a sudden sharp noise, or to make something do this (使)啪的一声折断 [断开]; 使啪嗒作响
- ② The tree branch snapped off during the storm, blocking a stretch of road. L39
- ③ You'll snap that ruler if you try it too far.
- ④ It's possible that the storm caused power lines to snap off. L38

/ɪnsə'maʊntəbəl/
insurmountable adj.

- an insurmountable difficulty or problem is too large or difficult to deal with [困难]难以克服的, 不可逾越的; [问题]难以处理的
- ① The challenges they are faced with seemed insurmountable. L38
- ② It has always been a mystery to me why they made mistakes that seemed insurmountable to correct. L40
- ③ The company had to ring up emergency services when faced with insurmountable problems. L35

/dʒɪɡzɔ:/
jigsaw n.

- ① jigsaw puzzle 智力拼图玩具
- ② I have no intention of solving the jigsaw puzzle. L28
- ③ I can't conceal the fact that completing the jigsaw puzzle is challenging. L28
- ④ He went to great lengths to prove that he could finish the jigsaw puzzle in just 1 minute. L28
- ⑤ She got rid of the jigsaw puzzle after finishing it. L28

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复 (置顶留言)

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/næg/
nag v.

- to keep asking someone to do something, or to keep complaining to someone about their behaviour, in an annoying way 跟...纠缠不休; 唠叨; 不停地抱怨
- nag sb. to do
- ① She questioned the wisdom of constantly nagging her children to do their homework. L27
- ② She always nags her brother to clean his room before guests arrive.
- ③ I try not to nag my dog to stop barking, but it can be hard sometimes.

/rʌst/
rust v. (使)生锈

- ① The rain caused the metal to rust even faster. L43
- ② For one agonizing moment, he saw the rusting bicycle. L43
- ③ They had to haul the rusting old car out of the garage for repairs. L43 rusting 现在分词

- plead ignorance of sth
- leisure time/activity
- be keen to do sth.
- be keen on doing sth.
- advisory service
- provide a/an adj. outlet for sth.
- get clogged
- sb. be under the delusion that+句子
- need a few minor adjustments
- a chunk of /chunks of
- nag sb. to do sth.

倒装

so...that... N2 L35 如此...以至于

1. So strong is her determination to succeed that she works late into the night.
2. So deep is his love for music that he practices for hours every day.
3. So powerful is the impact of social media that it can influence public opinion overnight.
4. So beautiful is the view here that it attracts tourists from all over the world.

as...adj./adv. ...as anything else

1. It is a question of pride as much as anything else.
2. as...as anything (else): "very" or "extremely"
3. He's as fat as anything (= very fat).
4. He was as calm as anything.
5. It was as obvious as anything that she didn't want to go.
6. He used to be as smart as anything.

As far as I could see “就我所见”或“在我看来”

1. As far as I could see, there were no problems with the plan.
2. As far as I could see, she was the best man for the job.

as good as, almost 几乎; 差不多

1. After studying for weeks, I feel as good as ready for the exam.
2. The summer's as good as over.
3. After the long meeting, I felt as good as exhausted.

46 Story+Expressions

- be a question of
- as...as anything else
- won't/wouldn't hear of it
- As far as I could see
- as good as

- become dependent on
- embark on
- lay out
- go so far as to do sth.
- cater for
- pent up
- tend to do
- put ... right
- call in sb.
- promise to do sth.
- get round to
- a drop of
- trace the cause of
- be left with

become dependent on

- Sooner or later, she will become more dependent on social media. L39
- Despite his talent, he chose to live in obscurity and became dependent on his family for support. L45
- What a relief it was when she started to become less dependent on others. L39

embark on

- After years of preparation, she finally embarked on the arduous journey of climbing Mount Everest. L35
- After years of training, she was required to embark on the journey of leading a team to a remote island. L22
- She insisted that he should embark on the journey to explore his talents in art. L22

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

lay out

- I noted with satisfaction that the designer carefully laid out the furniture in the living room. L37
- There was a note of triumph in her voice after she laid out the tables and decorations for the wedding. L37
- The way she laid out her bedroom strikes me as odd. L37

go so(as) far as to do sth.

- to be willing to do something that is extreme
- He is a big fan of the band and would go so far as to travel to another country to see their performance.
- Some people go so far as to camp outside the store for days to get the latest smartphone.
- They are so dedicated to their fitness goals that they go so far as to wake up at 5 AM every day to work out.

cater for

- to provide the things that a particular person or situation needs or wants
- The training program is designed to cater for employees at different skill levels within the company. L18
- The hotel offers a bewildering variety of services to cater for the needs of each guest. L38

pent up

pent-up: (of feelings, energy, etc.) that cannot be expressed or released [感情、精力] 被压抑的

- He specializes in helping people solve their pent-up feelings and emotions. L40
- She decided to tear up the letter to express her pent-up emotions. L40
- I am grateful to my friend for listening to my pent-up feelings. L40

tend to do

- The sailors tend to relax on the deck after a long day at sea. L28
- He tends to bargain with man to get the best price. L28
- Parents tend to keep an eye on their children while they play at the park. L33

put ... right

- If you put something right, you correct something that was wrong or that was causing problems. “纠正某事”或“把某事弄对”
- I need to put the mistake right that I made in my report.
- We should put the problem right that has been bothering us for weeks. N2L52
- She wants to put things right that went wrong during the meeting.

call in sb.

- to ask for the services of somebody
- When the truck broke down, they called in mechanics to help start it up and put the vehicle back into operation. L43
- It is not uncommon to hear that old houses owners call in carpenters for repairs. L43
- Facing a torrent of water, they called in plumbers to fix the burst pipes. L43

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

promise to do sth.

- Her husband promised to lull the kids to sleep before she came back from work. L44
- He promised to get a sleeper for me. L44
- He promised to give me exclusive access to the computer. L45

get round to sth./doing sth.

- How he never gets round to it is beyond me. L41
- She finally got round to insuring her antique jewelry against theft and damage. L44
- After months of delay, he got round to paying the premium for his car insurance. L43

trace the cause of

- The doctor had the foresight to trace the cause of the illness before it spread further. L42
- The new AI technology, as it has come to be known, helped researchers trace the cause of the environmental disaster. L42
- It has never been explained why he didn't trace the cause of the damage. L40

leave sb. with sth. = sb. be left with sth.

- The company was left with untold damage. L45
- The organization was left with exclusive access to the new technology. L45
- The detective was left with scanty clues to solve the mysterious crime. L38

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 复习新概念第二册语法, 查阅教学视频视频, 查中级红皮书(开篇视频)
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵 【内化单词+语法+习惯用法】 【听力+口语+写作练习】
3. 习惯用法造句/对话 【习惯用法造句指南】 每个5句
4. 反复听电影片段, 直到能听出关键短语/句子
5. 重复间隔 (置顶留言)

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

.....

Questions

.....

Homework

.....

Summary & Recap

.....

/pəˈluːʃən/

pollution n. 污染

- ① Many cities have become dependent on cars, which contributes to air pollution. L46N2L85
- ② People tend to do more outdoor activities when the pollution levels are low. L46
- ③ She was conscious that her actions could contribute to air pollution. L31

/əʊvəˈpɒpjuleɪtɪd/

overpopulated adj. 人口密度过高的

- ① People are keen to leave overpopulated cities because they want more space and quieter places to live. L46
- ② She is keen on solving the problems faced by overpopulated cities. L46
- ③ Despite the challenges of living in overpopulated cities, some people are keen to experience the vibrant culture.. L46

/ɪnˈdʌs.triə.laɪzɪd/

over-industrialized adj.

过度工业化的

- ① Some experts go so far as to say that over-industrialized areas are causing serious harm to the environment. L46
- ② The government might go so far as to close factories in over-industrialized regions to reduce pollution. L46
- ③ The government promises to clean up over-industrialized areas by planting more trees and reducing factory waste. L46

/ʃiə/

sheer adj.

- used to emphasize that something is very heavy, large etc (某物) 之重/之大等 [用于强调]
- the sheer volume/size of sth. 某物的庞大数量”或“某物的巨大体量

- ① Despite the sheer volume of complaints, the manager continued to plead ignorance of the problems in the workplace. L46
- ② I am impressed by the sheer size of the stadium. L28
- ③ The mere fact that you can keep up with the sheer volume of new words in this lesson shows how much you've improved. L34

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/wɜːldwaɪd/

worldwide adv.

- ① everywhere in the world 遍及全世界(的); 在全世界
- ② It has long been known that the band is famous worldwide. L38
- ③ It seems reasonable to assume that they have 2000 members worldwide. L36
- ④ It seems wildly improbable that he is recognized by audiences worldwide. L36

/əʊvəˈweɪl/

overwhelm v.

- if work or a problem overwhelms someone, it is too much or too difficult to deal with (问题等) 使无法解决, 使应接不暇, 压垮
- be/feel overwhelmed by/with sth. 被某事物压倒或淹没

- ① I'll never forget the moments when I was overwhelmed by the challenges. L14
- ② What invariably happens is that she is overwhelmed with work on her desk. L33
- ③ I have to remind myself that he may feel overwhelmed by the responsibility of being a leader. L36

/pəˈluːt/

pollute v.

- ① They seem to have been polluting the area for the past nine years. L36
- ② The mere fact that they continued to pollute the area is enough to put them under arrest. L34&L40
- ③ They cherish the hope that those who polluted the environment will be punished in the end. L34

/ˈpestɪ.sɪd/

pesticide n. 杀虫剂, 农药

- ① It is a chance in a million that the overuse of pesticides will not harm the environment. L36
- ② Farmers need to accept the fact that overuse of pesticides can have long-term consequences on soil health. L36
- ③ It seems highly improbable that the pesticide did not contribute to the water pollution in the area. L36 N2L85

/ˈfɜː.tɪ.laɪ.zə/

fertilizer n. 肥料

- ① Scientists presume that the overuse of fertilizers is strongly correlated with the damage in soil quality. L36
- ② Farmers often take videos of their fields to record the effects of different fertilizers on plant growth. L38
- ③ The scientist felt bewildered by the unexpected results of the fertilizer experiment. L38

/sæɪ.l.məˈneɪə/

salmonella n. 沙门(氏)菌

- ① He found scanty evidence of salmonella in the restaurant's kitchen. L38
- ② I was puzzled by the mysterious disappearance of the salmonella samples. L38

/lɪˈstɪ.ə.riə/

listeria n. 利斯特氏菌

- ① Scientists deduced from the lab results that the outbreak was caused by listeria. L38
- ② With the advent of advanced testing methods, detecting listeria in food products has become easier. L38

单
词
造
句
指
南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/vedʒɪˈteəriən/

vegetarian n.

- ① someone who does not eat meat or fish 素食主义者
- ② The guy designed a menu that catered for both vegetarians and meat-eaters. L46
- ③ Some people go so far as to say that becoming a vegetarian is the best choice for their health. L46
- ④ People who tend to be vegetarians often have a deep respect for animals. L46

/ɔːˈgæni.kəli/ /grəʊn/

organically-grown adj.

- ① The store offered a bewildering variety of organically-grown fruits and vegetables. L38
- ② Visitors to the farm were often bewildered by the sheer amount of organically-grown products available. L38
- ③ The new study shed light on the benefits of eating organically-grown foods. L38

/ɪnˈsɪdiəs/

insidious adj.

- an insidious change or problem spreads gradually without being noticed, and causes serious harm [变化或问题] 暗中为害的, 不知不觉间加剧的
- ① The community seems perturbed by the insidious effects of pollution on their health. L39
- ② It's all too easy to underestimate the harm of insidious disease. L37
- ③ She is under the delusion that the most insidious problem of public education will be solved quickly. L46

/ˈɜː.bən/

urban adj.

- ① relating to towns and cities 城镇的，城市的
- ② Residents in the urban areas insure their homes against damage caused by natural disasters. L43
- ③ Whether we should recover the cost of urban development projects through taxes is something we need to discuss. L43&L29
- ④ Workers had to haul construction materials into the urban area for the building project. L43

/ˈbɜːglə/

burglar n.

- someone who goes into houses, shops etc to steal things 小偷，窃贼
- ① The burglars blamed the homeowner for leaving their door unlocked. L37
- ② She woke up to find that there was a burglar in her house. L30
- ③ The burglars went direct to the jewelry store. L37
- ④ He reflected that they needed to take better precautions against burglars. L37 N2L74

/ˈbɜːgəl/

burgle v.

- ① to go into a building and steal things 闯入...行窃
- ② They lost faith in their neighborhood after being burgled several times. L37
- ③ Neither have I been burgled before, nor will I in the future. L37
- ④ It seems odd that the burglars didn't burgle the richest house there. L37

/ˈskriːm/

scream v.

- to shout something in a very loud high voice because you are angry or frightened [因愤怒或恐惧] 高声喊，大声叫
- scream at sb.
- ① It was not that she didn't understand, but his harsh words hurt deeply when he screamed at her. L39
- ② He had a sense of guilt after he screamed at her. L39
- ③ What a relief it was when he finally apologized after screaming at her. L39

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/ˈprəʊ.faʊnd/

profound adj.

- having a strong influence or effect [影响] 深刻的，极大的
- profound effect/influence/impact/consequence etc
- ① The mother's behaviour has a profound impact on the developing child.
- ② It's not that she enjoys getting angry, but losing her job had a profound effect on her mental well-being. L39
- ③ It's possible that his words had a profound influence on her decision. L38

/ɪrɪ'teɪ.ʃən/

irritation n.

- the feeling of being annoyed about something, especially something that happens repeatedly or for a long time 恼怒，生气 [尤指被反复发生或长时间发生的事激怒]
- ① The delay was a prelude to further irritation among the passengers. L33
- ② A series of mistakes caused irritation among the customers. L33
- ③ Stray dogs in the neighborhood are a source of irritation for the residents. L33

/ɪˈnesəsəntli/

incessantly adv.

- ① continuing without stopping 持续不断的，没完没了的
- ② The party got out of control as they argue incessantly. L33
- ③ He was on the phone incessantly, discussing the project with his team. L33
- ④ She hung up on her friend after arguing incessantly about their plans. L33

/waɪn/

whine v.

if a machine whines, it makes a continuous high sound 发出高音、刺耳或持续的噪音

- ① The washing machine began to whine loudly, indicating it needed repair.
- ② The computer's fan would whine every time it overheated.
- ③ The air conditioner, which had been running non-stop for days, began to whine loudly. N2L77

/helɪkɒp.tə/

helicopter n.

- ① The pilot must be punctual for the helicopter flight at sunrise. L37
- ② Before taking off, the pilot consulted the helicopter manual for pre-flight checks. L37
- ③ The helicopter will fly direct to the remote mountain. L37

/mæksɪmə/

maximum adj.

- the maximum amount, quantity, speed etc is the largest that is possible or allowed 最大量的, 最大限度的, 最大值的
- at maximum speed/volume

- ① It is outrageous that they played out music at maximum volume on the subway. L28
- ② I dread having the math test, but I know I have to complete it at maximum speed. L29
- ③ She cherishes the hope that her son will run toward the end at maximum speed. L34

/tek'nɒlədʒi/

technology n. 科技

- ① The engineer gave a satisfactory explanation for how the new technology works. L42
- ② The team made a descent into the deep cave to test the technology in extreme conditions. L42
- ③ He has been granted permission to use the latest technology. L40

单词造句指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

/kɒn.trɪ'bju:.ʃən/

contribution n.

- ① make ... contribution to
- ② It is incredible to me that such a young artist can make such a significant contribution to the art world. L36
- ③ The new employee bears a striking resemblance to the former CEO who made great contributions to the company's growth. L36

/məʊbaɪl/

mobile adj.

- ① mobile phone
- ② I presume that the missing mobile phone was left at the restaurant last night. L36
- ③ The thief plotted to steal the valuable mobile phones from the store. L36
- ④ It is unacceptable to use your mobile phone during important meetings. L36

/snɔ:/

snore v. 打鼾 打呼噜

- ① The hotel room was equipped with special pillows to cater for guests who snore. L3&L46
- ② He tended to snore when he slept on his back. L46
- ③ He finally put his snoring problem right with a new breathing technique. L46

/ə'fendə/

offender n.

- someone or something that is the cause of something bad 引发坏事的人[事物]
- the worst offender 罪魁祸首

- ① The report revealed that plastic waste is the worst offender in ocean pollution.
- ② In the study on pollution, the factory was identified as the worst offender.
- ③ When it comes to speeding, he is often considered the worst offender among his friends.

/ˈstæɡərɪŋ/

staggering adj.

■ extremely great or surprising 大得惊人的；令人吃惊的

- ① The exclusive access to the new software provided a staggering advantage. L45
- ② The nursery school teacher's dedication to early childhood education had a staggering impact on her students' development. L45&L9
- ③ It is extremely doubtful whether the project will succeed because of the staggering challenges it faces. L45

/ˈtrʌmpɪt/

trumpet v.

■ trumpeting noise 指类似喇叭声的噪音，刺耳或响亮的声音，引人注意的噪音或喧闹声

- ① If he hadn't made trumpeting sounds during the journey, I wouldn't have annoyed him the following month. N2L64
- ② Sleep always comes in snatches because my partner makes trumpeting noises during the night. L44
- ③ The trumpeting noise from the construction site kept the neighbors awake all night.

单词
造句
指南

网: v.+v.变化

其他单词+词性

四句型转换

原文摘抄+变

方式/地点/时间

6123456

结合习惯用法

结合学过的语法

- the sheer volume/size of sth.
- be/feel overwhelmed by/with sth.
- scream at sb.
- profound effect/influence/impact/
consequence etc
- at maximum speed/volume
- make ... contribution to
- the worst offender

homework

- 1. 单词造句/对话【单词造句指南】每个5句
- 2. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
- 3. 间隔重复（置顶留言）

47 Grammar

A be the price sb. pay for B
A 是为了 B 而付出的代价

1. Stress is the price I pay for working too much.
2. A headache is the price I pay for too much screen time.
3. A sleepless night is the price they pay for too much coffee.

threaten to do N2L62: to be likely to harm or destroy something
带来某种负面结果或危险；有.....的危险

1. The rising temperatures threaten to melt the polar ice.
2. The heavy rain threatens to cause floods.
3. The loud noise threatens to wake the baby.

Ever-increasing (不断增加的)

Ever-growing (不断增长的)

Ever-changing (不断变化的)

Ever-improving (不断改进的)

Ever-shifting (不断变化的)

on a scale ranging from A to B
on a scale of A to B

1. On a scale of 1 to 10, how much do you like this movie?
2. On a scale of 0 to 100, how confident are you about passing the exam?
3. On a scale of 'easy' to 'impossible,' how hard was that math problem?

against 与...相对比
used when you are comparing two things

1. Against last year's sales, our performance this year has improved significantly.
2. Against his usual quiet personality, his outburst at the meeting was surprising.

while 用法合集

conj. 并列连词 而 然而

I love coffee, while my sister prefers tea.

Some people work better to music while others do not.

He is very outgoing, while his brother is quite shy.

conj. 时间状语从句 当...时候, 在...期间

While I was cooking, my friend called me.

conj. 让步状语从句 尽管 although; despite the fact that

While it was raining, we decided to go for a walk.

While I am willing to help, I do not have much time available.

whatever N2L68 让步状语从句,可以省略 be 动词

Whatever the reason, we need to finish this project on time.

Whatever the cost, I'm going to buy that dress.

Whatever the weather, we're still going hiking tomorrow.

Whatever the problem, we can solve it together.

Whatever the result, I'm proud of what we've achieved.

47 Story+Expressions

- have the choice of a or b
- go off
- serve to do sth.
- assist sb. to do sth.
- a source of
- range from...to ...
- it was revealed that...
- in one's+年龄段 (twenties/thirties...)
- it was found that...
- keep sb. awake/be kept awake...

习惯	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
用法	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
造句	方式/地点/时间	6123456
指南	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

have the choice of a or b

- As far as I could see, we have the choice of taking the bus or taking a taxi to get to the airport. L46
- As far as I could see, we have the choice of staying in this hotel or finding another one nearby.

go off

- Whether you like it or not, the alarm clock will go off at 6 a.m. tomorrow. L29
- She failed to give a satisfactory explanation for why the smoke alarm went off suddenly during the day. L42

serve to do sth.

- Practical jokes often serve to entertain people. L40
- It's time to stop doing activities that serve only to harm our environment. L40
- As it has come to be known, challenges could serve to help us improve and grow. L42

assist sb. to do sth.

- She promised to assist her friend to lay out the decorations for the party. L46
- She pleaded ignorance of the rules and asked me to assist her to complete the task. L46
- He nagged his brother to assist him to build the lego castle. L46

a source of

- Exercise has proven to be a source of energy. N2L77
- The support group acts as a source of comfort for people going through difficult times. L45N2L44
- Much as I want to pay attention to the book, the constant noise from the construction site next door is a source of irritation. L26

range from ...to ...

- It is not uncommon to hear that the prices of the things in a store range from affordable to quite expensive. L43
- She added that the sizes of this dress range from extra small to extra large. L40

it was revealed that...

- It was revealed that she was a victim of a hoax. L40
- It was revealed that the new product was a form of deception. L40
- It was revealed that he obtained money by deception. L40
- It was revealed that the citizens remonstrated against the construction of the new highway. L40

in one's + twenties/thirties...

- He embarked on a journey to explore remote areas of the Amazon rainforest in his twenties. L46
- It is silly to indulge in games in one's twenties. L40
- She was granted permission to work remotely in her thirties. L40

it was found that...

- It was found that the final decision was based on inaccurate data. L9
- It was found that untold harm had been caused. L45
- It was found that she chose to live and work in obscurity to focus on her art.

keep sb. awake/be kept awake

- The bright streetlight that was switched on outside my window kept me awake all night. L42
- The painting depicted on the wall kept him awake these nights. L38
- How a simple love story kept her awake all night is beyond me. L41

习惯 用法 造句 指南	网: v.+v.变化	其他单词+词性
	四句型转换	原文摘抄+变
	方式/地点/时间	6123456
	其他习惯用法	结合学过的语法

homework

1. 复习新概念第二册语法，查阅教学视频视频，查中级红皮书(开篇视频)
2. 文章跟读至熟读成诵，内化单词+语法+习惯用法，听力+口语+写作练习
3. 习惯用法造句/对话【习惯用法造句指南】每个5句
4. 反复听电影片段，直到能听出关键短语/句子
5. 重复间隔（置顶留言）

Questions

Homework

Summary & Recap